

2026

أشهر وأحب كتب تعليمية ، وأوسعها انتشاراً

Selah El-Telmeez

Since 1960

4

Fourth Primary
Second Term

English



جميع حقوق الملكية الفكرية للمحتوى التعليمي الخاص
بكتاب الوزارة محفوظة لوزارة التربية والتعليم والتدريب
التي



Fourth Year Primary

المواصفة الامتحانية للصف الرابع الابتدائي 2026/2025

(A) Listening

2 Marks

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2 Marks

A listening text of about **FIFTY (50)** words at the appropriate difficulty level for primary **FOUR** followed by **FOUR (4)** sentences is provided. Topics should be related to the Set Books. Learners are asked to listen to the text and write (T) True or (F) False.

Half a mark each

(B) Reading

13 Marks

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3 Marks

SIX (6) multiple choice questions **MCQs** (3 vocabulary and 3 structures) related to what learners have studied are provided. Learners are asked to choose the correct answer from the **FOUR (4)** options given.

Half a mark each

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 2 Marks

An unseen text from **FORTY (40)** to **FIFTY (50)** words with **FOUR (4)** deletions is provided. **FIVE (5)** words related to vocabulary are also given in a box. Learners are asked to complete each deletion in the text with **ONE (1)** of the **FIVE (5)** words given. The first sentence should be written in full.

Half a mark each

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

8 Marks

An unseen literary or informational text from **SEVENTY (70)** to **EIGHTY (80)** words is provided. The text should be at the appropriate difficulty level for primary **FOUR**. Learners are asked to answer:

A. **TWO (2)** MCQs with **FOUR (4)** options

One mark each

B. **THREE (3)** open-ended questions

2 marks each

The questions should test the following reading comprehension skills:

- Identify the general idea of the text.
- Demonstrate understanding of specific details in a text.
- Determine the meaning of words and phrases in a text.
- Make logical inferences from the text.
- Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in a text.

(C) Writing **15 Marks**

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4 Marks

FOUR (4) structure sentences related to what learners have studied are provided. Learners are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) given between brackets.

One mark each

6 Punctuate the following:

4 Marks

TWO (2) simple statements (a sentence and a question) of about **SIX (6)** words each are provided. Each statement has **TWO (2)** missing punctuation marks (Capital Letter, Full Stop or Question Mark). Learners are asked to punctuate them correctly.

2 marks each

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

7 Marks

Learners are asked to write a paragraph of **FOUR (4)** sentences of not less than **TWENTY-FIVE (25)** words using the **THREE (3)** guiding words given.

(Two marks for relevance of ideas – Two marks for vocabulary – One mark for grammar – One mark for spelling – One mark for punctuation)



Fourth Year Primary

قطاع المعاهد الأزهرية
المواصفة الامتحانية للصف الرابع الابتدائي 2026/2025

(A) Listening

6 Marks

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

Pupils are asked to listen to a text of about three or four sentences. Three multiple-choice items are given. Pupils are asked to choose the correct answers.

Two marks each

(B) Language Functions

4 Marks

2 Read and complete the dialog:

Four words are given. Pupils are asked to complete the dialog with these words.

One mark each

(C) Vocabulary and Structures

12 Marks

3 Choose the correct answer:

4 Marks

Four multiple-choice items (two for vocabulary and two for grammar) are given. Pupils are asked to choose the correct answer.

One mark each

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

8 Marks

Pupils are asked to read and correct four underlined mistakes.

Two marks each

(D) Reading Comprehension

10 Marks

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A short text is given. Pupils are asked to read it and answer the questions. (Two true or false questions and three multiple-choice questions).

Two marks each

(E) Writing

8 Marks

6 Write a short paragraph/story/an e-mail:

Pupils are asked to write a paragraph or an e-mail of four sentences based on the material in the set books. Four key words are given and students are asked to use them to write the sentences.

Two marks each sentence

Contents

1 Unit

This is Where I live

Lesson 1: My Environment	11
Conversation	13
Lesson 1: Homework	16
Lesson 2: A Visit to the Village	17
Language	20
Lesson 2: Homework	24
Lesson 3 (A): A Day at the Riverbank	25
Lesson 3 (B): Pronunciation	28
Lesson 3: Homework	29
Lessons 4&5: Trip to the Mountains/Think and Create: A Presentation	30
Unit (1) Review	34
Reading & Conversation in Points	35
Dictation	36
Conjugation of Verbs	37
Writing Station	38
Important Paragraphs	39
Student's Book Activities	40
Test on unit (1)	41
Al-Azhar Test on unit (1)	44

2 Unit

Our World, Our Responsibility

Lesson 1: A Guide to Protecting Our Planet	47
Conversation	49
Lesson 1: Homework	52
Lesson 2: Go Green	53
Language	56
Lesson 2: Homework	58
Lesson 3 (A): Saving Resources	59
Lesson 3 (B): Pronunciation	62
Lesson 3: Homework	63
Lessons 4&5: Saving Our Planet Earth/ Think and Create	64
Unit (2) Review	69
Reading & Conversation in Points	70
Dictation	71
Conjugation of Verbs	72
Writing Station	73
Important Paragraphs	74
Student's Book Activities	75
Test on unit (2)	76
Al-Azhar Test on unit (2)	79

3 Unit

What's in the Package?

Lesson 1: Sharing with Families	82
Reading	84
Lesson 1: Homework	86
Lesson 2: Shopping for a Picnic	87
Language	90
Lesson 2: Homework	94
Lesson 3 (A): A School Picnic	95
Lesson 3 (B): Pronunciation	98
Lesson 3: Homework	99
Lessons 4&5: Reem Helps her Mom/Think and Create: A Poster	100
Unit (3) Review	104
Reading in Points	105
Dictation	106
Conjugation of Verbs	107
Writing Station	108
Important Paragraphs	109
Student's Book Activities	110
Test on unit (3)	111
Al-Azhar Test on unit (3)	114

Review 1

	Page
Vocabulary Summary	116
Language Summary	117
Review (1) Test (1)	119
Review (1) Test (2)	122

4

Unit

Let's Celebrate

Lesson 1: Family Gathering	126
Conversation	128
Lesson 1: Homework	130
Lesson 2: End-of-Year Party	131
Language	134
Lesson 2: Homework	136
Lesson 3 (A): Birthday Celebration	137
Lesson 3 (B): Pronunciation	140
Lesson 3: Homework	142
Lessons 4&5: Labor Day/Think and Create	143
Unit (4) Review	148
Reading & Conversation in Points	149
Dictation	150
Conjugation of Verbs	151
Writing Station	152
Important Paragraphs	153
Student's Book Activities	154
Test on unit (4)	155
Al-Azhar Test on unit (4)	158

5

Unit

Exploring Wonders in Egypt

Lesson 1: Land of History and Heritage	161
Reading	163
Lesson 1: Homework	165
Lesson 2: Adventures in South Sinai	166
Language	170
Lesson 2: Homework	172
Lesson 3 (A): A Day Between Two Ports	173
Lesson 3 (B): Pronunciation	176
Lesson 3: Homework	177
Lessons 4&5: Discover The Magic of Egypt/Think and Create	178
Unit (5) Review	182
Reading & Conversation in Points	183
Dictation	184
Conjugation of Verbs	185
Writing Station	186
Important Paragraphs	187
Student's Book Activities	188
Test on unit (5)	189
Al-Azhar Test on unit (5)	192

6

Unit

The Lost Kite

Story Elements	195
Story Vocabulary	197
Story Scenes	200
Story Practice	205
Student's Book Activities	209
Test on unit (6)	210

Review 2

Vocabulary Summary	213
Language Summary	214
Review (2) Test (1)	215
Review (2) Test (2)	218

Final Tests

Listening Scripts

221
252

1 Unit

This is Where I Live

Learning Outcomes

نتائج التعلم

Speaking

- Describe different environments using new vocabulary
- Present short oral talks using the past simple tense
- Pronounce words with silent letters (k, l) correctly in speech

- وصف بيئات مختلفة باستخدام مفردات جديدة
- تقديم محادثات شفوية قصيرة باستخدام زمن الماضي البسيط
- نطق كلمات بها الحروف الصامتة (k, l) بشكل صحيح في الكلام

Listening

- Listen to short texts and dialogs about environments and past events
- Identify words with silent letters (k, l) in spoken context

- الاستماع إلى نصوص قصيرة ومحادثات عن بيئات وأحداث ماضية
- تحديد كلمات بها الحروف الصامتة (k, l) في سياق منطوق

Reading

- Read texts and dialogs about different environments
- Identify main ideas and key vocabulary in context
- Recognize words with silent letters (k, l)

- قراءة نصوص ومحادثات حول بيئات مختلفة
- تحديد أفكار رئيسية ومفردات أساسية في سياق
- تعرّف كلمات بها الحروف الصامتة (k, l)

Writing

- Write a friendly letter about personal experiences in different places
- Apply correct letter structure, including greeting, body, and closing
- Use past simple tense and environmental vocabulary accurately in writing
- Plan a presentation on "What you like in the place you live"

- كتابة خطاب ودي عن تجارب شخصية في أماكن مختلفة
- تطبيق التركيب الصحيح للخطاب، بما يشمل التحية، نص الخطاب، والخاتمة
- استخدام زمن الماضي البسيط والمفردات البيئية بدقة في الكتابة
- التخطيط لعرض تقديمي عن "ما تحبه في المكان الذي تعيش فيه"

Lesson 1

My Environment

Listen, look, and repeat:

استمع، انظر وردّد:



Play Audio

New Vocabulary

مفردات جديدة



environment

بيئة



building

مبنى



city

مدينة



village

قرية



oasis

واحة



river

نهر

Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

project	مشروع	life	حياة	desert	صحراء
people	ناس/أشخاص	tents	خيام	wells	آبار
neighbors	جيران	simply	ببساطة	buses	أتوبيسات/حافلات
shops	متاجر/محلات	everywhere	كل مكان	exactly	بالضبط
camels	جمال	advantages	مزايا	challenges	تحديات

Adjectives الصفات

different	مختلف	tall	عالٍ/شاهق	interesting	مثير للاهتمام
-----------	-------	------	-----------	-------------	---------------



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
finish ينتهي	finished	do يقوم/يفعل	did
compare يقارن	compared	choose يختار	chose
explain يشرح	explained	write يكتب	wrote
travel يسافر	traveled	know يعرف	knew
farm يعمل بالزراعة	farmed	have يمتلك/لديه	had
realize يدرك	realized	understand يفهم	understood
live يعيش	lived		

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

What about you?	ماذا عنك؟	worked on	عمل على
raised animals	رَبَّى حيوانات	adapted to	تكيف مع

Definitions

تعريفات

An environment بيئة	is everything around us, like air, water, plants, and animals. هي كل شيء حولنا، مثل الهواء، الماء، النباتات، والحيوانات.
A city مدينة	is a big place with many people, cars, and tall buildings. هي مكان كبير به العديد من الناس، السيارات، والمباني العالية.
A village قرية	is a small place with few people and many farms. هي مكان صغير به قليل من الناس والعديد من المزارع.
An oasis واحة	is a green place with water in the desert. هي مكان أخضر به ماء في الصحراء.
A river نهر	is a long line of water that moves to the sea. هو خط طويل من المياه يتحرك إلى البحر.
Buildings مباني	are houses, schools, or offices where people live or work. هي المنازل، المدارس، أو المكاتب حيث يعيش فيها الناس أو يعملون.

**(Conversation) main points****النقاط الأساسية في المحادثة**

- Maha and Salma talked about the school projects they did.
مها وسلمى تحدثتا عن المشاريع المدرسية التي قامتا بها.
- Their projects were about life in the desert, village, and city.
كانت مشاريعهما عن الحياة في الصحراء، القرية، والمدينة.
- In the desert, people lived in tents, traveled on camels, and used wells for water.
في الصحراء، عاش الناس في خيام، سافروا على جمال، واستخدموا الآبار للحصول على الماء.
- People in villages farmed and raised animals.
الناس في القرى عملوا بالزراعة ورَبُّوا الحيوانات.
- People in the city lived in tall buildings and used cars and buses.
الناس في المدينة عاشوا في مباني عالية واستخدموا السيارات والأتوبيسات.
- These projects helped Maha and Sama understand how people adapted to different environments.
ساعدت هذه المشاريع مها وسما على فهم كيف تكيف الناس مع البيئات المختلفة.

Conversation**Different Places in the Environment****أماكن مختلفة في البيئة**

Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

**Maha**

1 Hi, Salma, did you finish the project our teacher asked us to do last week?
مرحبًا، يا سلمى، هل انتهيت من المشروع الذي طلبته منا معلّمتنا الأسبوع الماضي؟

2 Yes, I did. I enjoyed it a lot. What about you?

نعم، لقد انتهيت. استمتعتُ به كثيرًا. ماذا عنك؟

**Salma**

3 I worked on it with my cousin. We compared life in the city with life in the village. What did you choose?

عملت عليه مع ابنة عمي. قارنا الحياة في المدينة بالحياة في القرية. ماذا اخترت؟



Unit 1

This is Where I Live 2nd term

I wrote about the desert. I explained how people lived in tents, traveled on camels, and used wells for water.

4

كتبْتُ عن الصحراء. شرحتُ كيف عاش الناس في خيام، سافروا على جمال، واستخدموا الآبار للحصول على الماء.



5 That's interesting! I learned that people in villages lived simply. They farmed, raised animals, and knew all their neighbors.

هذا مثير للاهتمام! تعلمتُ أن الناس في القرى عاشوا ببساطة. عملوا بالزراعة، ربُّوا الحيوانات، وكانوا يعرفون جميع جيرانهم.



And city life was different. People lived in tall buildings, used cars and buses, and had shops everywhere.

6

وكانت حياة المدينة مختلفة. عاش الناس في مباني عالية، استخدموا سيارات وأتوبيسات، وكان لديهم متاجر في كل مكان.



7 Exactly. I realized every place had advantages and challenges.

بالضبط. أدركتُ أن كل مكان كان له مزايا وتحديات.



Yes, the project helped us understand how people adapted to their environments.

8

نعم، ساعدنا المشروع على فهم كيف تكيف الناس مع بيئاتهم.

Tryout



Read and put (✓) or (X):

اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أو (X):

1 Maha worked on the project with her sister.

()

2 Salma wrote about the oasis.

()

3 People lived in tents in the desert.

()

4 In the city, people farmed and raised animals.

()

4. (X)

3. (✓)

2. (X)

1. (X)

Answers:



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False: استمع واكتب (T) صحيح أو (F) خطأ:

- 1 People in the desert travel on camels. ()
- 2 People in the desert use taps to get water. ()
- 3 People in the city live in tents. ()
- 4 People in the city use cars and buses. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 I live in a tall that has many floors.
a. well b. tent c. building d. street
- 2 A/An is everything around us, like air, water, plants, and animals.
a. environment b. neighbor c. advantage d. challenge
- 3 There are a lot of farms in the
a. city b. desert c. river d. village
- 4 The Nile is an important source of water for many people in Egypt.
a. River b. Soil c. Street d. Farm
- 5 People in the live in buildings and use cars to go to work.
a. village b. oasis c. city d. desert
- 6 Farmers animals in my village.
a. farm b. raise c. travel d. ask
- 7 Camels to the desert by storing water and living in hot weather.
a. choose b. explain c. understand d. adapt
- 8 A/An is a green place with water in the desert.
a. city b. building c. oasis d. well

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

shops – life – different – farm – project

Soha wanted to compare life in the city with life in the village. She started a ⁽¹⁾ about this topic. She learned that ⁽²⁾ in the village is simple, where people ⁽³⁾ and raise animals. But city life is busy, with many cars and ⁽⁴⁾ in the streets and everywhere.

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النصّ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

The environment is everything around us, including air, water, land, and animals. The environment is different from one place to another. You can notice that people, animals, and even plants can adapt to the environment where they live. For example, in the hot desert, there is very little water, so people use wells or live near oases. In cities that are very large, people move from one place to another by car or bus.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The text is about different
 a. foods b. animals c. plants d. environments
- 2 The underlined word "wells" means "deep holes with".
 a. water b. air c. camels d. people

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 3 What is the environment?

- 4 How do people in the desert adapt to having very little water?

- 5 What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- what did you choose, Salma

Lesson

2

A Visit to the Village

Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

weather	طقس	air	هواء	weekend	نهاية الأسبوع
houses	منازل	streets	شوارع	flowers	أزهار
path	مسار/ممر	forest	غابة	birds	طيور
farmer	فلاح/مُزارع	story	قصة	travelers	مسافرون
market	سوق	rest	راحة	sellers	بائعون
near	قريب من	beside	بجانب		

Adjectives الصفات

sunny	مشمس	excited	متحمّس	clean	نظيف
fresh	طازج/نقي	busy	مشغول/مزدحم	clear	صافي
colorful	ملوّن	friendly	ودود	quiet	هادئ

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
visit يزور	visited	see يرى	saw
notice يلاحظ	noticed	tell يخبر/يحكي	told
smell يشم	smelled	find يجد	found
enjoy يستمتع	enjoyed	go يذهب	went
learn يتعلّم	learned	buy يشتري	bought
listen يستمع	listened	sing يغني/يغرد	sang



Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

compared to	مقارنة بـ	walked beside	مشى/سار بجانب
not far from	ليس بعيدًا عن	In the afternoon,	بعد الظهر،
took photos of	التقط صورًا لـ	such as	مثل



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

A Day in the Village يوم في القرية

Last weekend, Ahmed and Omar visited a small village near the city. The weather was sunny. They were excited. They walked beside the river and noticed how clean and fresh the air was compared to the busy city. Omar took photos of



houses, trees, and the clear water. Ahmed smelled the colorful flowers beside the path. Not far from the village, they saw a small forest with tall trees and many birds. A farmer told them a story about an oasis in the desert where travelers could find water and rest. In the afternoon, they went to the market and bought fresh fruit such as apples, oranges, and bananas. The sellers were friendly and told them stories about village life. Ahmed and Omar enjoyed the quiet streets, listened to birds singing, and learned many new things about the people who lived there.

في نهاية الأسبوع الماضي، زار أحمد وعُمر قرية صغيرة بالقرب من المدينة. كان الطقس مشمسًا، كانا متحمسين. مشيا بجانب النهر ولاحظا مدى نظافة ونقاء الهواء مقارنة بالمدينة المزدحمة. التقط عُمر صورًا للمنازل، الأشجار والمياه الصافية. شم أحمد الزهور الملونة بجانب المسار. ليس بعيدًا عن القرية، رأيا غابة صغيرة بها أشجار طويلة والعديد من الطيور. حكى لهما أحد المزارعين قصة عن واحة في الصحراء حيث يمكن للمسافرين أن يجدوا الماء والراحة. بعد الظهر، ذهبا إلى السوق واشترى فاكهة طازجة مثل التفاح، البرتقال، والموز. كان البائعون ودودين وحكوا لهما قصصًا عن حياة القرية. استمتع أحمد وعُمر بالشوارع الهادئة، واستمعا إلى غناء الطيور، وتعلّما أشياء جديدة كثيرة عن الناس الذين عاشوا هناك.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 They enjoyed the air in the village.
a. fresh b. polluted c. busy d. dirty
- 2 When I go to the village, I photos of the farms.
a. take b. do c. smell d. listen
- 3 The is full of trees and birds.
a. desert b. forest c. air d. sun
- 4 My grandma always told me before I went to sleep.
a. photos b. pictures c. streets d. stories

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

inside – beside – compared – sellers – bought

My father visited a village last week. He really enjoyed his time there. The village was quiet, and the air was cleaner ⁽¹⁾ to the city. He walked ⁽²⁾ the river and enjoyed the smell of the colorful flowers. He ⁽³⁾ fruit from the market, where the ⁽⁴⁾ were friendly.

3 Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 1 What was the weather like in the village?

.....

- 2 What could travelers find at the oasis?

.....

- 3 Where did Ahmed and Omar go in the afternoon?

.....



Read, look, and notice:

اقرأ، انظر ولاحظ:

Language in use

Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

- The past tense tells us about actions that already happened.

يُخبرنا الزمن الماضي عن أفعال حدثت بالفعل.

Form التكوين

Affirmative الإثبات

Negative النفي

Question الاستفهام

I. Affirmative



Subject (فاعل) + the 2nd form of the verb (التصريف الثاني للفعل) ...

(A) Regular verbs

الأفعال المنتظمة

verb + -ed

لمعظم الأفعال.

Ex: watch → watched

verb + -d

إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (-e).

Ex: notice → noticed

verb + -ied

إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (y) وقبله حرف ساكن.

Ex: study → studied

Ex: – We watched a movie last night.



– I studied the lesson before the exam.



Tip!

- The “-ed” ending can be pronounced in three different ways:

يمكن نطق النهاية “-ed” بثلاث طرق مختلفة:

/t/	/d/	/Id/
help <u>ed</u>	call <u>ed</u>	want <u>ed</u>
ساعد	نادى	أراد
look <u>ed</u>	clean <u>ed</u>	need <u>ed</u>
نظر	نظف	احتاج

**(B) Irregular verbs**

الأفعال غير المنتظمة

- These verbs don't have a specific ending. • هذه الأفعال ليس لها نهاية محددة.

Ex:

Present		Past
go	يذهب	went
buy	يشترى	bought

Ex: – I **went** to the market yesterday.



– My sister **bought** a gift to her friend.



- Verb to (be) has (2) forms in the affirmative past simple: • فعل (be) له صيغتان في الماضي البسيط المثبت:

I, He, She, It,
Singular noun → **was** ...
(اسم مفرد)

You, We, They,
Plural noun → **were** ...
(اسم جمع)

Ex: – He **was** at the school two days ago.

**2. Negative**

Subject + **did not (didn't) + base verb (الفعل الأساسي) ...**
was not (wasn't)/were not (weren't)

Ex: – I **didn't** watch TV yesterday.



– The city **wasn't** quiet.





Yes/No question

(السؤال بـ (هل)

3. Question

?

Did + subject + base verb

...?

Was/Were + subject

Ex: Did you go to the park last week?

– Yes, I did.

– No, I didn't.



Ex: Were Salma and Maha at home?

– Yes, they were.

– No, they weren't.



Wh-question

السؤال بأداة الاستفهام

Question word (كلمة الاستفهام) + $\frac{\text{did + subject + base verb}}{\text{was/were + subject}}$...?

Ex: – When did you learn to ride a bike?

I learned to ride a bike when I was young.



Ex: – Why was he happy?

Because he got high marks.



Key words الكلمات الدالة

- | | | | |
|--------------------|------------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| • yesterday | • أمس | • last (week) | (الأسبوع) الماضي |
| • (a few days) ago | • منذ (أيام قليلة) مضت | • in (2000) | في عام (2000) |
| • in the past | • في الماضي | • when I was young | عندما كنت صغيراً |
| • earlier today | • في وقت سابق اليوم | | |

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Omar a small village last weekend.
a. visit b. visits c. visited d. visiting
- 2 I many birds in the forest last month.
a. saw b. see c. sees d. am seeing
- 3 My sister didn't in the concert two days ago.
a. sing b. sang c. singing d. sings
- 4 you travel to London in 2023?
a. Do b. Did c. Does d. Were
- 5 The weather sunny yesterday.
a. were b. is c. are d. was
- 6 Where did you yesterday morning?
a. went b. go c. goes d. going
- 7 We walk beside the river a few days ago.
a. don't b. doesn't c. didn't d. weren't
- 8 They here last night.
a. isn't b. aren't c. wasn't d. weren't

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 The sellers (was) friendly when I went to the market.
- 2 My dad (buys) fresh fruit earlier today.
- 3 (Were) he excited about the trip last month?
- 4 I (learn) to cook when I was young.
- 5 We (don't) eat pizza yesterday.
- 6 Did she (does) the school project last Saturday?
- 7 How (do) the teacher explain the lesson in the class yesterday?
- 8 They didn't (had) fun at the park last week.

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Last weekend, Mazen visited a small village in El-Minya Governorate. The weather was sunny, and the air was clean. He was excited. He walked beside the Nile and took photos of houses, trees, and green fields. A farmer told him about how he farms and raises animals. In the afternoon, he went to the market and bought fresh fruit and vegetables. He enjoyed the quiet streets, listened to birds singing, and learned many new things about village life.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Mazen visited a small in El-Minya Governorate.
a. city b. town c. oasis d. village
- 2 The opposite of the underlined word "bought" is ".....".
a. saw b. said c. smiled d. sold

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 3 What does the underlined pronoun "him" refer to?

- 4 What did Mazen take photos of?

- 5 Summarize the text in one sentence.

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 I went to the club (next) week.
- 2 When did you (met) him?

3 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من أربع (4) جمل مستخدماً الكلمات أدناه:

"A day in a village"
(visited – trees – quiet)

Look, read, and notice:

انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:



fisherman

صياد



palm trees

أشجار النخيل



boat

قارب/مركب



sail

بيدر



riverbank

ضفة النهر



crops

محاصيل

Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

children	أطفال	grandfather	جد	farms	مزارع
vegetables	خضراوات	bread	خبز	cheese	جبين
cucumbers	خيار	history	تاريخ	Nile River	نهر النيل
fruits	فواكه	hat	قبعة	together	معًا
again	مرة أخرى	soon	قريبًا	sun	شمس

Adjectives الصفات

calm	هادئ	hot	حار/ساخن	happy	سعيد
------	------	-----	----------	-------	------

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
help يساعد	helped	wake up يستيقظ	woke up
plant يزرع	planted	show يُبين/يُري	showed
play يلعب	played	wear يرتدي	wore
		eat يأكل	ate



Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

went on a trip	ذهب في رحلة قصيرة	sat under a tree	جلس تحت شجرة
At the end of the day,	في نهاية اليوم،	went home	عاد إلى المنزل
catch fish	يصاد سمكًا	feel tired	يشعر بالتعب
took a small boat	أخذ قاربًا صغيرًا	near the river	قرب النهر



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

A day at the Riverbank يوم على ضفة النهر

Last Friday, Youssef went on a trip with his grandfather to the Nile River. They woke up early and took a small boat. He helped his grandfather sail. The water in the river was calm. Youssef saw fishermen catching fish. His grandfather showed him the green



farms near the river where farmers plant crops, vegetables, and fruits. They also saw tall palm trees and children playing on the riverbank. Youssef wore his hat because the sun was hot. They sat under a tree and ate bread, cheese, and cucumbers. His grandfather told him stories about the history of the Nile. Youssef was very happy because he learned many new things. At the end of the day, they went home together, feeling tired but excited to visit the Nile again soon.

الجمعة الماضية، ذهب يوسف في رحلة قصيرة مع جده إلى نهر النيل. استيقظا مبكرًا وأخذًا قاربًا صغيرًا. ساعد جده في الإبحار. كانت المياه في النهر هادئة. رأى يوسف الصيادين يصطادون السمك. أراه جده المزارع الخضراء قرب النهر حيث يزرع المزارعون المحاصيل، الخضراوات، والفواكه. كما رأى أشجار النخيل الطويلة والأطفال يلعبون على ضفة النهر. ارتدى يوسف قبعته لأن الشمس كانت حارة. جلسا تحت شجرة وأكلا خبزًا، جبناً، وخيارًا. حكى له جده قصصًا عن تاريخ النيل. كان يوسف سعيدًا جدًا لأنه تعلّم أشياء جديدة كثيرة. في نهاية اليوم، عادا إلى المنزل معًا، يشعران بالتعب لكنهما متحمّسان لزيارة النيل مرة أخرى قريبًا.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The captain the boat well.
a. sails b. catches c. plants d. wakes
- 2 work on boats and catch fresh fish from the Nile.
a. Engineers b. Fishermen c. Farmers d. Teachers
- 3 Farmers plant on their farms near the Nile.
a. cheese b. fish c. water d. crops
- 4 I usually walk along the, enjoying the view of the Nile.
a. desert b. riverbank c. beach d. mountain

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

bread – boats – farms – feeding – catching

My school organized a trip to the Nile River. We arrived at the riverbank and then took small ⁽¹⁾ out onto the water. We saw fishermen ⁽²⁾ fish and farmers planting crops on the ⁽³⁾ near the riverbank. At the end of the day, we sat in a field, eating ⁽⁴⁾, cheese, and cucumbers.

3 Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 1 When did Youssef and his grandfather go on the trip?
-

- 2 How did they travel on the river?
-

- 3 Why did Youssef wear his hat?
-

B Pronunciation

 Listen, look, and repeat:

استمع، انظر ورّد:



Silent Letters (k, l) الحروف الصامتة (k, l)

- **Silent k:** The letter “k” is not pronounced when it comes before “n” at the start of a word.
- حرف k الصامت: لا يُنطق الحرف “k” عندما يأتي قبل “n” في بداية الكلمة.

Words with silent “k” كلمات بحرف “k” الصامت



knock
يطرق



knee
ركبة



knife
سكين



know
تعرف

- **Silent l:** The letter “l” is not pronounced in some words, especially after “a” or “o”.
- حرف l الصامت: لا يُنطق حرف “l” في بعض الكلمات، خاصةً بعد “a” أو “o”.

Words with silent “l” كلمات بحرف “l” الصامت



walk
يمشي



talk
تتكلم



half
نصف



folk
شعبي/قومي

Extra Words

كلمات إضافية

Silent (l)

calm

هادئ

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 We got some dates from the tall
 a. weeds b. grass c. flowers d. palm trees
- 2 The has two white sails and it moves on the water.
 a. car b. boat c. bus d. train
- 3 Dana went on a school to the Pyramids.
 a. trip b. café c. playground d. library

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

The Nile River is the source of life in Egypt. It is a source of water and food. Farmers grow crops that we eat using its water, and we also eat fish that fishermen catch from it. Its bank is a place where we can rest and enjoy the amazing view and the fresh air. We can sit in the fields and have a picnic. The Nile River is a part of our life and history.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The underlined pronoun "it" refers to
 a. Egypt b. food c. fish d. the Nile River
- 2 The Nile River is a part of our
 a. community b. history c. neighborhood d. street

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 3 What does the underlined word "crops" mean?

.....

- 4 Where can we rest and enjoy an amazing view?

.....

- 5 What is the general idea of the text?

.....



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

mountains	جبال	view	منظر/إطلالة	fields	حقول
stream	جدول مياه	gently	برفق	rocks	صخور
sound	صوت	truly	حقاً	paths	مسارات/ممرات

Adjectives الصفات

cold	بارد	wide	واسع/عريض	peaceful	هادئ
relaxed	مسترخ	delicious	لذيذ	wonderful	رائع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضي
want	يريد	wanted
flow	يتدفق	flowed
stop	يتوقف	stopped
pack	يحزم/يعبئ	packed
wish	يتمنى	wished
share	يشارك	shared

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

At night,	في الليل،	On that day,	في ذلك اليوم،
in the distance	في الأفق	felt happy	شعر بالسعادة
tell ... about	يخبر ... عن	I hope you are doing well.	أتمنى أن تكون بخير.

**Read and notice:**

اقرأ ولاحظ:

Dear Lina, **Greeting التحية**I hope you are doing well. I want to tell you more about my trip to the mountains last weekend. **Introduction المقدمة****Body نص الخطاب**

On that day, the weather was cold, but the view was so beautiful. I saw tall green trees, wide fields, and a big stream flowing gently between the rocks. The sound of the water made the place feel peaceful. We walked on small paths and stopped to take photos of the birds that were singing in the distance. Although we were far from the city, I felt happy and relaxed. At night, we sat near the mountains, and shared stories. I ate some delicious fruits that my mother packed. It was truly a wonderful trip, and I wished you were with me.

Your friend, **Closing الخاتمة**Sara **Signature الإمضاء**

عزيزتي لينا،
أتمنى أن تكوني بخير. أريد أن أخبرك المزيد عن رحلتي القصيرة إلى الجبال في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع الماضية. في ذلك اليوم، كان الطقس باردًا، لكن المنظر كان جميلًا جدًا. رأيت أشجارًا خضراء طويلة، حقولًا واسعة، وجدول مياه كبيرًا يتدفق برفق بين الصخور. أضيف صوت الماء على المكان هدوءًا. سرنا في مسارات صغيرة، وتوقفنا لالتقاط صور للطيور التي كانت تغني في الأفق. رغم أننا كنا بعيدين عن المدينة، شعرنا بالسعادة والاسترخاء. في الليل، جلسنا قرب الجبال، وتبادلنا القصص. أكلت بعض الفواكه اللذيذة التي عبأتها والدي. كانت رحلة رائعة حقًا، و تمنيت لو كنت معي.
صديقتك،
سارة

Read and notice the following steps:

اقرأ ولاحظ الخطوات الآتية:

Steps of writing a friendly letter

خطوات كتابة خطاب ودي



1 Greeting – Start with Dear/Hello/Hi + name, التحية - ابدأ بعزيري/مرحبًا/أهلاً + اسم،

Ex: Dear Lina,

2 Introduction – Say why you are writing

المقدمة - اذكر سبب كتابتك

3 Body – Share details or stories

نص الخطاب - شارك التفاصيل أو القصص



4 Closing – End politely

الخاتمة - اختتم بأدب

Ex: Write back soon, See you soon, Your friend, Best wishes

5 Signature – Write your name

الإمضاء - اكتب اسمك



Read and notice the following tips:

اقرأ ولاحظ النصائح الآتية:

Tips for creating a presentation about different types of environments



نصائح لإنشاء عرض تقديمي عن أنواع البيئات المختلفة

- Use clear headings. استخدم عناوين واضحة.
- Add pictures of the different types of environments. أضف صورًا لأنواع البيئات المختلفة.
- Keep the text simple. اجعل النص بسيطًا.
- Speak for 3-5 minutes. تحدث لمدة 3-5 دقائق.
- Speak clearly and slowly so your friends can understand you. تحدث بوضوح وببطء ليتمكن أصدقاؤك من فهمك.
- Say, "Today I will talk about different types of environments." قل: «اليوم سأحدث عن أنواع البيئات المختلفة».

Ex:

Different types of environments أنواع البيئات المختلفة

Village Environment:

بيئة القرية:

Villages are quiet. People there grow crops and raise animals.

القرى هادئة. الناس هناك يزرعون المحاصيل ويربون الحيوانات.

City Environment:

بيئة المدينة:

Cities are busy and crowded. There are many buildings, cars, shops, and factories.

المدن صاخبة ومزدحمة. بها العديد من المباني، السيارات، المتاجر، والمصانع.

What I like in the place where I live:

ما يعجبني في المكان الذي أعيش فيه:

I live in a village. I like the quiet life and the fresh air there.

أعيش في قرية. أحب الحياة الهادئة والهواء النقي هناك.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 I had a beautiful sea from my hotel room.
a. trip b. mountain c. boat d. view
- 2 Sitting under a tree in a quiet field makes me feel
a. sad b. angry c. relaxed d. nervous
- 3 We walked along the stone to reach the lake.
a. paths b. streams c. rivers d. trees
- 4 He his bags to travel to London.
a. packed b. stopped c. flowed d. planted

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

weather – wonderful – distance – whether – mountain

I like hiking and walking. Last winter, I went on a trip to the mountains. When I reached the top of the ⁽¹⁾, the view was ⁽²⁾, but the ⁽³⁾ was cold. I took photos of the birds in the ⁽⁴⁾
It was a wonderful trip.

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- 1 i saw trees, fields, and streams
- 2 what happened on your trip to the mountains

4 Write a friendly letter of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب خطاباً ودياً من أربع (4) جمل مستخدماً الكلمات أدناه:

You are Sameh and your friend's name is Kamal.

"A trip to the mountains"

(view – cold – stream)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 1 Review

Vocabulary

environment	بيئة	building	مبنى	city	مدينة
village	قرية	oasis	واحة	river	نهر
fisherman	صياد	palm trees	أشجار النخيل	boat	قارب
sail	يبحر	riverbank	ضفة النهر	crops	محاصيل
sellers	بائعون	farmer	فلاح/مزارع	fields	حقول
peaceful	هادئ	paths	مسارات/ممرات	stream	جدول مياه

Language

Past Simple Tense

- The past tense tells us about actions that already happened.

• يُخبرنا الزمن الماضي عن أفعال حدثت بالفعل.

Subject + the 2nd form of the verb ...

Affirmative



- Ex:** – We **watched** a movie last night.
– I **went** to the market yesterday.

Subject + **did not (didn't) + base verb** ...

Negative



- Ex:** – I **didn't watch** TV yesterday.
– The city **wasn't** quiet.

Did + subject + base verb ...?

Yes/No question



- Ex:** – **Did** you **go** to the park last week?
– **Were** Salma and Maha at home?

Was/Were + subject

Wh-question



Question word + **did + subject + base verb** ...?
was/were + subject

- Ex:** – When **did** you **learn** to ride a bike?
– Why **was** he happy?



Reading & Conversation in Points

Lesson 1 My Environment

- Maha and Salma did projects about life in the village, desert, and city.
قامت مها وسلمى بمشاريع عن الحياة في القرية، الصحراء، والمدينة.
- In the desert, people lived in tents, traveled on camels, and used wells to get water.
في الصحراء، عاش الناس في خيام، سافروا على جمال، واستخدموا الآبار للحصول على الماء.
- In the village, people farmed and raised animals.
في القرية، عمل الناس بالزراعة وقاموا بتربية الحيوانات.
- In the city, people lived in tall buildings, used cars, and had many shops.
في المدينة، عاش الناس في مباني عالية، استخدموا السيارات، وكان لديهم العديد من المتاجر.

Lesson 2 A Visit to the Village

- Ahmed and Omar visited a small village.
زار أحمد وعُمر قرية صغيرة.
- The air was fresh, and the streets were quiet.
كان الهواء نقيًا، وكانت الشوارع هادئة.
- Omar took photos of houses, trees, and the clear water.
التقط عُمر صورًا للمنازل، الأشجار، والمياه الصافية.
- They bought fruit from friendly sellers.
اشترى فاكهة من بائعين ودودين.

Lesson 3 (A) A Day at the Riverbank

- Youssef and his grandfather sailed on a small boat on the Nile River.
أبحر يوسف وجده في قارب صغير على نهر النيل.
- They saw fishermen catching fish.
رأى الصيادين يصطادون السمك.
- They saw farmers planting crops.
رأى المزارعين يزرعون المحاصيل.
- Grandfather told Youssef about the history of the Nile.
أخبر الجد يوسف عن تاريخ النيل.

Lessons 4&5 Trip to the Mountains/Think and Create: A Presentation

- Sara's trip to the mountains was wonderful.
رحلة سارة إلى الجبال كانت رائعة.
- The view was beautiful.
كان المنظر جميلًا.
- She saw wide fields and a big stream.
رأت حقولًا واسعة وجدول مياه كبيرًا.
- She took photos, shared stories, and ate delicious fruits.
التقطت صورًا، وشاركت قصصًا، وأكلت فواكه لذيذة.



Dictation

Lesson (1)

.....	مبنى	.....	بيئة
.....	قرية	.....	مدينة
.....	نهر	.....	واحة
.....	تحديات	.....	مزايا
.....	خيام	.....	آبار
.....	مثير للاهتمام	.....	مختلف
.....	حياة	.....	جيران

Lesson (2)

.....	هواء	.....	طقس
.....	بائعون	.....	مسافرون
.....	سوق	.....	راحة
.....	صافي	.....	طازج/نقي
.....	فلاح/مزارع	.....	غابة

Lesson (3)

.....	أشجار النخيل	.....	صياد
.....	يبحر	.....	قارب/مركب
.....	محاصيل	.....	ضفة النهر
.....	يطرق	.....	ركبة
.....	سكين	.....	تعرف
.....	يمشي	.....	تتحدث
.....	نصف	.....	شعبي/قومي

Lessons (4&5)

.....	مسارات/ممرات	.....	حقول
.....	مسترخ	.....	هادئ
.....	جدول مياه	.....	برقي



Conjugation of Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
finish	finished	smell	.....
choose	chose	tell	.....
compare		enjoy	.....
write		find	.....
explain		learn	.....
know		go	.....
travel		listen	.....
understand		buy	.....
realize		live	.....
have		sing	.....
visit		help	.....
plant		wake up	.....
notice		show	.....
see		eat	.....
wear		want	.....
flow		pack	.....
stop		wish	.....



Writing Station

حلها صح

هذا الجزء خاص بالتدريب على حل سؤال (Writing) في الورقة الامتحانية

Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

"Your last visit to a village"

1 Think of words related to the topic and sort them in the boxes below.

فكر في كلمات ذات صلة بالموضوع وصرّفها في الصناديق أدناه.

Nouns

1. air 2. streets 3. fields

Verbs

1. visited 2. was 3. saw

Others

1. small 2. fresh 3. quiet

2 Form your sentences.

كوّن جملك.

Subject (Pronoun/Noun) + verb + the rest of the sentence (تكملة الجملة)

1. My family and I visited a small village last weekend.

2. The air was fresh.

3. The streets were quiet.

4. We saw a river and green fields.

3 Write your paragraph.

اكتب فقرتك.

My family and I visited a small village last weekend. The air was fresh. The streets were quiet. We saw a river and green fields.

Write it yourself!

اكتب بنفسك!

"A day at the riverbank"

Nouns

1. 2. 3.

Verbs

1. 2. 3.

Others

1. 2. 3.

Your sentences

1.

2.

3.

4.

Your paragraph

فقرتك



Important Paragraphs

Different places in the environment

tents – raise – city

People in the desert live in **tents**. In the village, people farm and **raise** animals. They know all their neighbors. In the **city**, people live in tall buildings.



A day in the village

clean – walked – photos

I was in a small village yesterday. The air was **clean**. I **walked** beside a river. I took **photos** of houses, trees, and the clear water.



The Nile River trip

sailed – fishermen – farms

I **sailed** on a small boat with my grandfather on the Nile River. We saw **fishermen** catching fish. We saw green **farms** with palm trees. I was excited.



A trip to the mountains

view – streams – paths

I went on a trip to the mountains. The **view** was beautiful. I saw fields and **streams**. I walked on **paths** and took amazing photos.





Student's Book Activities

هذا الجزء خاص بأنشطة الكتاب المدرسي

1 Fill in the blanks using the words in the box: املا الفراغات مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

building – village – environment – River – oasis

- 1 The is everything around us, like air, water, land, and animals.
- 2 A tall can have many floors where people live or work.
- 3 A is a small place where people live together.
- 4 In the hot desert, there is very little water, but sometimes you can find an with plants and trees.
- 5 The Nile flows through Egypt.

2 Correct the underlined word in each sentence: صحح الكلمة التي تحتها خط في كل جملة:

- 1 We goes to the zoo last Sunday. →
- 2 She buyed a new bag yesterday. →
- 3 They didn't went to school. →
- 4 He doesn't eat meat yesterday. →

3 Rearrange the words to make a sentence: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملة:

- 1 took / a / boat / They / small / the / on / Nile.
.....
- 2 was / A / fisherman / fish. / catching
.....
- 3 walked / the / riverbank. / along / They
.....
- 4 Youssef / sail. / learned / to / how
.....
- 5 palm trees / riverbank. / near / were / tall / There / the
.....

Test on unit (1)

(A) Listening

نصوص الاستماع بنهاية الكتاب



Play Audio

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Adam visited a big city last Friday. ()
2. He was excited. ()
3. He smelled the colorful flowers. ()
4. He bought bananas and oranges. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The garden was in the early morning, and I felt relaxed there.
a. noisy b. crowded c. famous d. peaceful
2. A/An is a big place with many people, cars, and tall buildings.
a. city b. village c. oasis d. building
3. He dropped a bucket into the to get water.
a. floor b. well c. bus d. photo
4. I sat beside my grandfather and to his exciting stories.
a. listened b. listening c. listens d. listen
5. She call Jana last week.
a. don't b. doesn't c. didn't d. wasn't
6. they tired after their last trip?
a. Were b. Was c. Is d. Did



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

teachers – farmers – fishermen – crops – riverbank

The Nile River flows through my village. The Nile and the fields around the (1) are full of life. You can see (2) catching fish on their boats, and (3) working hard to plant (4) on their farms. You can also see children playing on the riverbank.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Egypt has different environments. You can live in big cities like Cairo and Alexandria and enjoy the busy city life. You can go shopping in malls and shops, and take a taxi or a bus wherever you want. If you like the simple life, you can visit the villages near the Nile River. There, you will enjoy the fresh air, quiet streets, and clear water. For people who like adventure, they can visit Sinai and climb its amazing mountains.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Cairo is a/an
a. village b. city c. mountain d. oasis
2. The underlined word "quiet" means ".....".
a. peaceful b. busy c. crowded d. noisy

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. How can you go anywhere you want in the city?

.....

4. What does the underlined word "its" refer to?

.....

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....



(C) Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. I (wear) the blue shirt yesterday.
2. Did you (enjoyed) the view?
3. What (does) she eat earlier today?
4. Wael traveled to Aswan two days (last).

6 Punctuate the following:

1. i realized every place had advantages
.....
2. Where did youssef go with his grandfather
.....

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

“A day near the mountains”

(weather – peaceful – share)

Al-Azhar Test on unit (1)

(A) Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:



1. Noha went on a trip with her
a. father b. mother c. grandfather d. grandmother
2. They took a small
a. ship b. boat c. car d. train
3. The water in the river was
a. calm b. high c. strong d. cold

(B) Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

River – fields – village – see

Asser : Where did you go last weekend, Tamer?

Tamer: I went to a small ⁽¹⁾ in Al-Fayoum.

Asser : What did you ⁽²⁾ there?

Tamer: I saw the Nile ⁽³⁾, green ⁽⁴⁾, and farms.

Asser : That sounds amazing!

(C) Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. People in the use wells for water.
a. tower b. city c. desert d. shop
2. The environment faces many, so we must protect it.
a. advantages b. challenges c. distances d. projects
3. When I was young, I in a small village.
a. live b. lives c. lived d. living
4. I didn't to school yesterday.
a. go b. goes c. went d. going

**4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:**

1. The ancient Egyptians was hard workers. (.....)
2. We don't see her many years ago. (.....)
3. What did she finds in the box? (.....)
4. I bake some bread last week. (.....)

(D) Reading Comprehension**5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

I'm Ali. I went on a trip with my family to the mountains last weekend. The weather was cold, but the view was beautiful, with tall green trees, wide fields, and a stream flowing gently between the rocks. The sound of the water made the place peaceful. We walked on small paths, took photos of singing birds, and enjoyed the quiet life away from the city. At night, we shared stories and ate delicious fruits. It was a wonderful trip.

(A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Ali went on a trip with his friends. ()
2. The sound of the water made the place peaceful. ()

(B) Choose the correct answer:

3. Ali went to the mountains last
a. summer b. month c. year d. weekend
4. There was a flowing gently between the rocks.
a. stream b. river c. sea d. lake
5. At night, they shared stories and ate delicious
a. vegetables b. fruits c. crops d. cakes

(E) Writing**6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences:**

"Different places in the environment"

(desert – farms – tall – shops)

.....

.....

.....

2 Unit

Our World, Our Responsibility



Learning Outcomes

نتائج التعلم

Speaking

- Talk about ways to protect the planet using simple sentences
- Use conjunctions correctly in short spoken sentences
- Pronounce r-controlled words correctly in speech

- التحدث عن طرق حماية الكوكب باستخدام جمل بسيطة
- استخدام أدوات الربط بشكل صحيح في جمل قصيرة منطوقة
- نطق الكلمات التي يتحكم فيها حرف الـ "r" بشكل صحيح في الكلام

Listening

- Listen carefully to texts and dialogs about how to go green and protect the planet

• الاستماع بعناية إلى نصوص ومحادثات عن كيفية الحفاظ على البيئة وحماية الكوكب

- Identify key details such as actions, reasons, and effects related to protecting the environment

• تحديد التفاصيل الأساسية مثل الأفعال، الأسباب، والآثار المتعلقة بحماية البيئة

- Recognize and understand r-controlled words in spoken sentences

• التعرف على الكلمات التي يتحكم فيها حرف الـ "r" وفهمها في جمل منطوقة

- Identify the use of conjunctions in short dialogs or instructions

• تحديد استخدام أدوات الربط في المحادثات القصيرة أو التعليمات

Reading

- Read short texts and dialogs about going green and understand the main ideas

• قراءة نصوص قصيرة ومحادثات عن الحفاظ على البيئة وفهم الأفكار الرئيسية

- Recognize vocabulary related to environmental actions

• التعرف على المفردات المتعلقة بالأعمال البيئية

- Identify r-controlled words in texts

• تحديد الكلمات التي يتحكم فيها حرف الـ "r" في نصوص

- Recognize and understand the use of conjunctions in sentences

• التعرف على استخدام أدوات الربط في الجمل وفهمها

- Read sample emails and identify the greeting, body, and closing

• قراءة نماذج رسائل بريد إلكتروني وتحديد التحية، نص الرسالة، والخاتمة

Writing

- Write short sentences or paragraphs about ways to protect the environment

• كتابة جمل قصيرة وفقرات عن طرق حماية البيئة

- Use r-controlled words correctly in sentences

• استخدام كلمات يتحكم فيها حرف الـ "r" بشكل صحيح في جمل

- Write sentences using correct conjunctions

• كتابة جمل باستخدام أدوات ربط صحيحة

- Write a simple email including a greeting, a few sentences about a topic, and a closing, create a brochure about going green

• كتابة رسالة بريد إلكتروني بسيطة تتضمن تحية، وعدة جمل عن موضوع ما، وخاتمة، أنشئ منشورًا عن الحفاظ على البيئة

Lesson 1 A Guide to Protecting Our Planet

Listen, look, and repeat:

استمع، انظر وردد:



Play Audio

New Vocabulary

مفردات جديدة



recycle

إعادة تدوير



reduce

يقلل/يخفف



reuse

إعادة استخدام



planet

كوكب



apply

يطبق

Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

class	فصل	water	مياه	electricity	كهرباء
again	مرة أخرى	bottle	زجاجة	away	بعيداً
paper	ورق	plastic	بلاستيك	today	اليوم
home	منزل	Miss	أستاذة/سيدة	things	أشياء

Adjectives الصفات

clean	نظيف	old	قديم	less	أقل
-------	------	-----	------	------	-----



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
turn يغيّر/يحوّل	turned	keep يحافظ على	kept
use يستخدم	used	mean يعني	meant
waste يهدر	wasted	throw يرمي/يلقي	threw
refill يعيد ملء	refilled		
remember يتذكّر	remembered		
learn يتعلّم	learned		

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

stand for	يرمز إلى	For example,	على سبيل المثال،
instead of	بدلاً من	at school	في المدرسة
talk about	يتحدث/يتكلم عن	throw ... away	يتخلص من
What about ...?	ماذا عن ...؟	turn ... into	يحوّل ... إلى

Definitions

تعريفات

planet	كوكب	the place where we all live; we must keep it clean and safe المكان الذي نعيش فيه جميعاً؛ يجب أن نحافظ عليه نظيفاً وآمناً
reduce	يقلّل/يخفّض	using less of something, like water or electricity, to avoid waste استخدام كمية أقل من شيء ما، مثل الماء أو الكهرباء لتجنب الهدر
reuse	إعادة استخدام	using something again instead of throwing it away استخدام شيء ما مرة أخرى بدلاً من التخلص منه
recycle	إعادة تدوير	turning old materials into new things, like paper, plastic, or metal تحويل مواد قديمة إلى أشياء جديدة مثل الورق، البلاستيك، أو المعدن
apply	يطبّق	to use something you know in a situation أن تستخدم شيئاً ما تعرفه في موقف معيّن

**(Conversation) main points****النقاط الأساسية في المحادثة**

- The teacher talks with the class about keeping our planet clean.

تتحدث المعلمة مع الفصل عن الحفاظ على نظافة كوكبنا.

- She talks about the idea of the 3Rs: Reduce, Reuse, and Recycle.

تتحدث عن فكرة القواعد الثلاث وهي: التقليل، إعادة الاستخدام، وإعادة التدوير.

- "Reduce" means using less water or electricity.

«التقليل» يعني استخدامًا أقل للماء أو الكهرباء.

- "Reuse" means using things again.

«إعادة الاستخدام» تعني استخدام الأشياء مرة أخرى.

- "Recycle" means turning old things into new ones.

«إعادة التدوير» تعني تحويل الأشياء القديمة إلى أشياء جديدة.

- The teacher tells the students to use the 3Rs at school and at home.

تطلب المعلمة من التلاميذ استخدام القواعد الثلاث في المدرسة والمنزل.

- The students promise to follow what they learned.

يعد التلاميذ باتباع ما تعلموه.

Conversation**Caring for Our Planet**

الاعتناء بكوكبنا

Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:



Teacher

Good morning, class! Today we'll talk about how to keep our planet clean using the 3Rs.

صباح الخير، يا فصل! سنتحدث اليوم عن كيفية الحفاظ على نظافة كوكبنا باستخدام القواعد الثلاث.

2 What are the 3Rs, Miss?

ما هي القواعد الثلاث، يا أستاذة؟



Students



3 They stand for Reduce, Reuse, and Recycle.

هي ترمز إلى: التقليل، إعادة الاستخدام، وإعادة التدوير.

4 What does *Reduce* mean?

ماذا تعني كلمة التقليل؟



Salim



5 It means using less. For example, don't waste water or electricity.

إنها تعني استخدامًا أقل. على سبيل المثال، لا تهدر الماء أو الكهرباء.

6 And *Reuse*?

وإعادة الاستخدام؟



Farouk



7 It means using things again—like refilling a bottle instead of throwing it away.

إنها تعني استخدام الأشياء مرة أخرى - مثل إعادة تعبئة الزجاجاة بدلاً من التخلص منها.

8 What about "Recycle"?

وماذا عن «إعادة التدوير»؟



Omar



9 That's when we turn old things into new ones, like paper or plastic. Remember, class, you should apply what you learned today at school and at home to keep our planet clean!

هذا عندما نحول الأشياء القديمة إلى أشياء جديدة، مثل الورق أو البلاستيك. تذكروا يا فصل، يجب أن تطبقوا ما تعلمتموه اليوم في المدرسة وفي المنزل للحفاظ على كوكبنا نظيفًا!

10 We will, Miss!

سنفعل ذلك، يا أستاذة!



1 Listen and write (T) True or F (False): استمع واكتب (T) صحيح أو (F) خطأ:



Play Audio

- 1 Amal teaches her children the 3Rs. ()
- 2 They only use shopping bags once. ()
- 3 They recycle bottles instead of throwing them away. ()
- 4 They turn on the lights to save electricity. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The is the place where we all live; we must keep it clean and safe.
 - a. floor
 - b. planet
 - c. moon
 - d. sun
- 2 Please, throw the empty plastic in the recycling bin.
 - a. bottle
 - b. flower
 - c. chair
 - d. sandwich
- 3 We should everything we learned in class to our daily lives.
 - a. waste
 - b. apply
 - c. refill
 - d. throw
- 4 is turning old materials into new things, like paper and metal.
 - a. Recycling
 - b. Reusing
 - c. Reducing
 - d. Refilling
- 5 The water bottle is empty. Let's it.
 - a. remake
 - b. refill
 - c. rebuild
 - d. rewrite
- 6 I that I didn't put my book in my backpack at school.
 - a. remembered
 - b. called
 - c. kept
 - d. reminded
- 7 Our science visited the school lab to do an experiment.
 - a. playground
 - b. class
 - c. hospital
 - d. kitchen
- 8 To is to use less of something, like water or electricity, to avoid waste.
 - a. reduce
 - b. recycle
 - c. replant
 - d. return

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

less – waste – plastic – planet – again

I am Adam. I always try to keep our planet clean. I reduce ⁽¹⁾
by using ⁽²⁾ paper, reusing bottles for water, and recycling
⁽³⁾ things at home. My family helps too. We want to make the
⁽⁴⁾ a better and cleaner place.

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النصّ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Hala. My son Omar told me about the 3Rs he learned in school; Reduce, Reuse, and Recycle. I was so happy to hear that! We now try to reduce waste by using less plastic, reusing jars and bottles at home, and recycling boxes and paper. I think teaching children about the 3Rs is very important because they learn how to care for the environment. Together, we can keep our planet clean and safe for everyone.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Hala's told her about the 3Rs he learned in school.
a. brother b. father c. uncle d. son
- 2 The opposite of the underlined word "less" is
a. fewer b. more c. lower d. shorter

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 3 How do they try to reduce waste?
.....
- 4 Why does Hala think teaching children about the 3Rs is important?
.....
- 5 Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- What does "reduce" mean, miss Laila

Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

way	طريقة	page	صفحة	email	رسالة بريد إلكتروني
letter	خطاب/رسالة	pollution	تلوث	rides	رحلات/مشاوير
tote bag	كيس/حقيبة قماش	shopping	تسوق	sea animals	حيوانات بحرية
nature	الطبيعة	others	آخرون	litter	قمامة/نفايات
bin	سلة المهملات	surroundings	المناطق المحيطة	together	معًا

Adjectives الصفات

safe	آمن	healthy	صحي
------	-----	---------	-----

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
reduce يقلل/يخفف	reduced	write يكتب	wrote
walk يمشي	walked	send يرسل	sent
share يشارك	shared	ride يركب	rode
harm يؤذي	harmed		
remind يُذكّر	reminded		
work يعمل	worked		
help يساعد	helped		
stay يبقى	stayed		
enjoy يستمتع	enjoyed		

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

go green	يكون صديقًا للبيئة	on both sides	على كلا الاتجاهين
instead of	بدلاً من		



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Let's Go Green! هيا نكن أصدقاء للبيئة!

We can all help keep our planet clean and healthy.

One way to go green is to use less paper. We can write on both sides of the page and send emails instead of paper letters. To reduce pollution, we can walk, ride a bike, or share rides with others instead of using many cars. It's also a great idea to



use tote bags instead of plastic ones when shopping because plastic harms sea animals and nature. We should always throw litter in the bin and remind others to keep our surroundings clean. When we all work together, we help our planet stay clean, safe, and green for everyone to enjoy.

يمكننا جميعًا المساعدة في الحفاظ على كوكبنا نظيفًا وصحيًا. إحدى الطرق لتصبح أصدقاء للبيئة هي استخدام ورق أقل. يمكننا الكتابة على وجهي الصفحة وإرسال الرسائل الإلكترونية بدلًا من الرسائل الورقية. لتقليل التلوث، يمكننا المشي، ركوب الدراجة، أو مشاركة الرحلات مع الآخرين بدلًا من استخدام العديد من السيارات. ومن الأفكار الجيدة أيضًا استخدام أكياس القماش بدلًا من الأكياس البلاستيكية عند التسوق، لأن البلاستيك يؤذي الحيوانات البحرية والطبيعة. يجب علينا دائمًا إلقاء القمامة في سلة المهملات وتذكير الآخرين بالحفاظ على نظافة المناطق المحيطة بنا. عندما نعمل جميعًا معًا، فإننا نساعد كوكبنا على البقاء نظيفًا. آمنًا، وصديقًا للبيئة ليستمتع به الجميع.

Tryout



Read and put (✓) or (X):

اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أو (X):

- 1 Using less paper can help us go green. ()
- 2 Riding a bike and sharing rides increase pollution. ()
- 3 It's better to use plastic bags when shopping. ()
- 4 Working together helps our planet stay clean and safe. ()

4. (✓)

3. (X)

2. (X)

1. (✓)

Answers:

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 I bought vegetables from the supermarket, and I put them in my
 a. tote bag b. page c. pocket d. foot
- 2 Let's send a/an instead of a paper letter.
 a. call b. email c. chat d. song
- 3 People reduce by walking or sharing rides.
 a. pollution b. trees c. litter d. shopping
- 4 We saw a sign that says, "Throw litter in the".
 a. street b. floor c. park d. bin

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

green – bags – sea animals – plastic – recycle

My name is Laila. I watched a video about going ⁽¹⁾ It showed how plastic hurts ⁽²⁾ and how tote bags can help. After watching, I told my family to ⁽³⁾ and stop using ⁽⁴⁾ bags. I love helping nature!

3 Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 1 How can we reduce pollution?
-

- 2 What should we remind others to do?
-

- 3 When does our planet stay clean, safe, and green?
-



Read, look, and notice:

اقرأ، انظر ولاحظ:

Language in use

Conjunctions أدوات الربط

- Conjunctions are words that join parts of a sentence together, helping ideas flow smoothly. أدوات الربط هي كلمات تربط أجزاء الجملة معًا، مما يساعد على انتقال الأفكار بسلاسة.

nor

- We use **nor** to add a second negative idea. نستخدم **nor** بمعنى «ولا» لإضافة فكرة سلبية ثانية.

Ex: – We don't burn plastic, **nor** do we throw it on the ground.



so

- We use **so** to show a result. نستخدم **so** بمعنى «لذا/لذلك» لإظهار نتيجة ما.

Ex: – We sort the waste, **so** our neighborhood stays clean.



because

- We use **because** to show a reason or cause. نستخدم **because** بمعنى «لأن» لإظهار سبب أو علة.

Ex: – We recycle paper **because** it helps save trees.



Remember

- and:** adds more ideas. تضيف أفكارًا أكثر.
- Ex:** – I like bananas **and** mangoes.
- but:** shows contrast. تظهر تناقضًا.
- Ex:** – I can draw, **but** I can't sing.
- or:** gives a choice. تعطي خيارًا.
- Ex:** – Do you want milk **or** juice?

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 We took an umbrella it was raining.
a. so b. because c. to d. nor
- 2 I don't like chocolate, do I like candy.
a. nor b. so c. but d. and
- 3 He studied hard, he passed the test.
a. but b. nor c. because d. so
- 4 Ali wanted to help, he picked up the litter.
a. so b. by c. but d. because
- 5 I'm happy I got a new toy.
a. because b. for c. and d. nor
- 6 Ali didn't study, did he do his homework.
a. so b. or c. nor d. because
- 7 The floor was dirty, I cleaned it.
a. or b. so c. because d. but
- 8 We are reading this book it's very interesting.
a. because b. nor c. for d. by

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 The sun was shining, (because) I wore sunglasses.
- 2 We don't watch TV, (but) do we play video games.
- 3 I cleaned my room (or) my mom told me to do it.
- 4 Hana was tired, (nor) she took a nap.
- 5 We are happy (and) it's the weekend.
- 6 Maged isn't tall, (but) is he thin.
- 7 They wanted to learn, (nor) they listened carefully.
- 8 The baby is crying (so) he is hungry.

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Hassan. As a farmer, I see how nature helps us every day. I try to protect the land by not using plastic and by planting more trees. I teach my children to keep the farm clean and throw litter in bins. Trees give us fresh air, so I plant new ones every year. I believe that if we all take care of our planet, it will stay healthy and full of life for the future.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 The underlined word "fresh" means ".....".

a. clean

b. old

c. bad

d. green

2 Hassan tries to protect the land by trees.

a. cutting

b. throwing

c. planting

d. eating

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

3 What does Hassan teach his children?

4 What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

5 What is the main idea of the text?

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

1 I didn't see my cousin (but) my grandmother.

2 We are staying indoors (so) it's very hot today.

3 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من أربع (4) جمل مستخدماً الكلمات أدناه:

"Helping our planet"
(tote bags – bin – nature)

Lesson 3

(A) Saving Resources

Look, read, and notice:

انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:



gas

غاز



electricity

كهرباء



water

ماء

Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

Earth	الأرض	resources	موارد	wisely	بحكمة
tap	صنبور/حنفية	while	خلال/بينما	teeth	أسنان
fans	مراوح	carefully	بعناية	friends	أصدقاء
actions	أفعال	every day	كل يوم		

Adjectives الصفات

important	مهم	small	صغير
-----------	-----	-------	------

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
save يوفّر/يحافظ على	saved	leave يغادر	left
brush ينظف/يغسل بالفرشاة	brushed	give يعطي	gave
cook يطبخ	cooked		

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

make a big difference	يُحدث فرقًا كبيرًا	leave the room	يغادر الغرفة
stay warm	يبقى دافئًا	run out	ينفذ
switch off lights	يطفى الأنوار	turn off the tap	يغلق الصنبور



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Small Actions Make a Big Difference! الأفعال الصغيرة تُحدث فرقًا كبيرًا!!

Our Earth gives us many important resources like water, electricity, and gas. We need to use them wisely so they don't run out. We can save water by turning off the tap while brushing our teeth. We can save electricity by switching off lights and fans when we leave the room. Gas helps us cook and stay warm, so we should never waste it. We can also remind our family and friends to use these resources carefully. When we save what Earth gives us, we help the planet stay clean and healthy for everyone. Small actions every day can make a big difference!



تمنحنا أرضنا العديد من الموارد المهمة مثل الماء، الكهرباء، والغاز. نحن بحاجة إلى استخدامها بحكمة حتى لا تنفد. يمكننا توفير الماء عن طريق إغلاق الصنبور أثناء تنظيف أسناننا. يمكننا توفير الكهرباء بإطفاء الأنوار والمراوح عندما نغادر الغرفة. يساعدنا الغاز في الطهي والبقاء دافئين، لذلك يجب ألا نهدره أبدًا. يمكننا أيضًا تذكير عائلتنا وأصدقائنا باستخدام هذه الموارد بعناية. عندما نحافظ على ما تمنحنا إياه الأرض، فإننا نساعد الكوكب على البقاء نظيفًا وصحيًا للجميع. الأفعال الصغيرة كل يوم يمكن أن تُحدث فرقًا كبيرًا!!

Tryout

Read and put (✓) or (X):

اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أو (X):

- 1 Earth gives us water, electricity, and gas. ()
- 2 We should waste water when we brush our teeth. ()
- 3 We can save electricity by switching on the lights. ()
- 4 We use electricity to cook and stay warm. ()
- 5 Small actions every day can help our planet. ()

5. (✓)

4. (X)

3. (X)

2. (X)

1. (✓)

Answers:

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Earth gives us many resources.
 a. bad b. important c. old d. warm
- 2 We can save water by turning off the while brushing our teeth.
 a. oven b. fridge c. tap d. TV
- 3 People save by switching off lights and fans.
 a. electricity b. water c. gas d. air
- 4 Gas helps us cook and stay
 a. cold b. happy c. excited d. warm

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

turn off – lights – resources – trees – gas

I'm Sara. I use the ⁽¹⁾ around me wisely. I ⁽²⁾ the tap while I brush my teeth. I switch off the ⁽³⁾ and fans when I leave the room. I know that ⁽⁴⁾ helps me cook, so I never waste it.

3 Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 1 When should we switch off lights and fans?
-

- 2 Who can we remind to use resources carefully?
-

- 3 Give some examples of Earth's resources.
-

B Pronunciation



Listen, look, and repeat:

استمع، انظر وردد:

R-controlled words

الكلمات التي يتحكم فيها حرف الـ r

- The letter "r" changes the sound of the vowel before it.

• الحرف "ر" يغير صوت الحرف المتحرك الذي يأتي قبله.



birthday

عيد ميلاد



shirt

قميص



fur

فرو



nurse

ممرضة

Extra Words

كلمات إضافية

ir /ɜ:r/

ur /ɜ:r/

girl

furniture

أثاث

bird

purple

بنفسجي



Remember

or /ɔ:r/, /ɜ:r/

er /ɜ:r/, /ər/

ar /ɑ:r/

world

عالم

teacher

معلمة

star

نجمة

work

عمل

runner

عداء

far

بعيد

storm

عاصفة

term

ترم/فترة

corn

درة

tiger

نمر

sister

أخت

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 We should all use Earth's resources
 a. badly b. wisely c. kindly d. quickly
- 2 Small can make a big difference.
 a. actions b. fans c. habitats d. stories
- 3 I feel hot. I'll turn on the
 a. fan b. gas c. electricity d. book

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Sami. I learned that we should use Earth's resources wisely every day. I always turn off the tap while brushing my teeth and switch off lights and fans when I leave the room. My family also saves gas by cooking carefully and not wasting it. I remind my friends to do the same at school and at home. When we save water, electricity, and gas, we help keep our planet clean, healthy, and beautiful for everyone.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Sami always turns off the tap while brushing his
 a. teeth b. hair c. clothes d. hands
- 2 The opposite of the underlined word "leave" is ".....".
 a. walk b. run c. stay d. drive

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 3 What does Sami do when he leaves the room?

- 4 What happens when we save Earth's resources?

- 5 What is the general idea of the text?



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

animals	حيوانات	plants	نباتات	food	طعام
place	مكان	sunlight	ضوء الشمس	soil	تربة
trees	أشجار	flowers	زهور	world	عالم

Adjectives الصفات

kind	عطوف/لطيف	beautiful	جميل	strong	قوي
------	-----------	-----------	------	--------	-----

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
want يريد	wanted	tell يخبر	told
live يعيش	lived	can يستطيع	could
scare يخيف	scared	hurt يؤذي	hurt
need يحتاج	needed	grow يصبح/ينمو	grew
plant يزرع	planted	make يجعل	made
care يري	cared		
protect يحمي	protected		

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

take care of يعتني بـ	Your friend, صديقك،
stay healthy يبقى صحيحاً	I hope you are doing great! أتمنى أن تكون بخيراً!



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Message

To : mai@hotmail.com

From : mona@gmail.com

Subject : Taking Care of Animals and Plants → **Title to the email**
عنوان رسالة البريد الإلكتروني

Hi Mai, → **Greet your friend**
قم بتحيةة صديقك

I hope you are doing great!

I want to tell you about how we can take care of animals and plants. We should always be kind to animals and give them food, water, and a safe place to live. We must never hurt them or scare them. → **Introduction: What the email is about**
المقدمة: ما نتحدث عنه الرسالة

Plants also need care. They need sunlight, water, and clean soil to grow strong. We can plant trees and flowers to make our world more beautiful. If we care for animals and plants, our planet will stay healthy. → **Body: details**
النص: التفاصيل

Let's protect them together! → **Conclusion: friendly closing**
الخاتمة: نهاية ودية

Your friend,

Mona → **Closing: sign your name**
الخاتمة: وقع اسمك

مرحبًا يا مي،
أتمنى أن تكوني بخير! أريد أن أخبرك عن كيف يمكننا أن نعتني بالحيوانات والنباتات. يجب أن نكون دائمًا لطفاء مع الحيوانات، ونقدم لها الطعام، الماء، ومكانًا آمنًا للعيش. لا يجب أن نؤذيها أو نخيفها أبدًا. كما أن النباتات تحتاج إلى عناية أيضًا. فهي تحتاج إلى ضوء الشمس، الماء، والتربة النظيفة لتنمو بقوة. يمكننا زراعة الأشجار والزهور لجعل عالمنا أكثر جمالًا. إذا اعتنينا بالحيوانات والنباتات، سيبقى كوكبنا صحيًا.
فلنحفظها معًا!
صديقتك،
منى

Send



Read and notice the following steps:

اقرأ ولاحظ الخطوات الآتية:

Steps of writing an email

خطوات كتابة رسالة بريد إلكتروني



1 Title: write a clear title

العنوان: اكتب عنوانًا واضحًا

Ex: Taking Care of Animals and Plants

2 Greeting: greet your friend

التحية: قم بتحية صديقك

Ex: Hi Mai,

3 Introduction: write what the email is about

المقدمة: اكتب ما تدور حوله رسالة بريدك الإلكتروني

Ex: I want to tell you about how we can take care of animals and plants.

4 Body: write a clear message in detail.

النص: اكتب رسالة واضحة وبالتفصيل

5 Conclusion: end with a friendly closing

الخاتمة: إنه بخاتمة ودية

6 Closing: sign your name

الخاتمة: وقع اسمك

Ex: Your friend,

Mona

A Brochure About Going Green

منشور عن كيف نكون أصدقاء للبيئة



Read and notice the following tips:

اقرأ ولاحظ النصائح الآتية:

Tips for creating a brochure

نصائح لإنشاء منشور



• Choose a title.

اختر عنوانًا.

• Divide the page into sections.

قسّم الصفحة إلى أجزاء/أقسام.

• Write a short description on each side.

اكتب وصفًا موجزًا على كل جانب.

• Add subheadings.

أضف عناوين فرعية.

• Use pictures or drawings.

استخدم صورًا أو رسومات.

• Write short and clear information.

اكتب معلومات قصيرة وواضحة.

• Share it with your class!

شاركه مع زملائك في الفصل!



Ex:

title

عنوان

drawings/pictures

رسومات/صور

3Rs

(Reduce - Reuse - Recycle)



Follow the 3Rs.

اتبع القواعد الثلاث.

Reduce قُلِّل

– Use less. استخدم أقل.

Reuse أعد الاستخدام

– Use things again. استخدم الأشياء مرة أخرى.

Recycle أعد التدوير

– Turn old things into new ones.

حوِّل الأشياء القديمة إلى أشياء جديدة.

subheading

عنوان فرعي

Save Our Resources



Use resources wisely.

استخدم الموارد بحكمة.

Water المياه

– Turn off the tap.

أغلق الصنبور.

Electricity الكهرباء

– Switch off the lights and fans when you leave the room.

أطفئ الأنوار والمراوح عندما تغادر الغرفة.

Gas الغاز

– Never waste gas.

لا تهدر الغاز أبدًا.

section

قسم

Help Plants and Animals



Take care of animals and plants.

اعتني بالحيوانات والنباتات.

Animals حيوانات

– Be kind to animals, and give them food and water.

كن لطيفًا مع الحيوانات، وأعطهم الطعام والماء.

– Give animals a safe place and never hurt them.

امنح الحيوانات مكانًا آمنًا ولا تؤذهم أبدًا.

Plants النباتات

– Make sure plants get sunlight and water.

تأكد أن النباتات تحصل على ضوء الشمس والماء.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 I like looking at Flowers and trees make me happy.
a. books b. plants c. animals d. clouds
- 2 Please be kind to the animals and don't them.
a. scare b. play c. need d. care
- 3 Plants need and water.
a. sunlight b. juice c. milk d. winter
- 4 Hana care of her cats and dogs.
a. grows b. plants c. lives d. takes

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

trees – grow – animals – safe – kind

I like feeding the birds and watering the flowers in my garden. Seeing ⁽¹⁾ happy and plants ⁽²⁾ makes me feel happy. I try to plant ⁽³⁾ and take care of flowers. Every small action helps animals and plants stay ⁽⁴⁾ and healthy.

3 Write an email of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب رسالة بريد إلكتروني من أربع (4) جمل مستخدماً الكلمات أدناه:

Your name is Tamer and your email address is (tamer@yahoo.com). Your friend's name is Fady and his email address is (fady@yahoo.com).

"Ways to save the planet"

(care – safe – grow)

To :

From :

Subject:

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Vocabulary

recycle	إعادة تدوير	reduce	يقلِّل/يخفِّض	reuse	إعادة استخدام
planet	كوكب	apply	يطبِّق	electricity	كهرباء
bottle	زجاجة	paper	ورق	plastic	بلاستيك
letter	خطاب/رسالة	pollution	تلوُّث	tote bag	كيس/حقيبة قماش
nature	الطبيعة	litter	قمامة/نفايات	surroundings	المناطق المحيطة
gas	غاز	water	ماء	Earth	الأرض
resources	موارد	wisely	بحكمة	birthday	عيد ميلاد
shirt	قميص	girl	بنت	bird	طائر
fur	فرو	nurse	ممرضة	furniture	أثاث
purple	بنفسجي	sunlight	ضوء الشمس	soil	تربة

Language

Conjunctions

- Conjunctions are words that join parts of a sentence together, helping ideas flow smoothly.

• أدوات الربط هي كلمات تربط أجزاء الجملة معًا، ممَّا يساعد على تدفُّق الأفكار بسلاسة.

nor

- We use “**nor**” to add a second negative idea.

Ex: – We don’t burn plastic, **nor** do we throw it on the ground.

so

- We use “**so**” to show a result.

Ex: – We sort the waste, **so** our neighborhood stays clean.

because

- We use “**because**” to show a reason or cause.

Ex: – We recycle paper **because** it helps save trees.



Reading & Conversation in Points

Lesson 1 A Guide to Protecting Our Planet

- We can keep our planet clean by using the 3Rs.
يمكننا أن نحافظ على نظافة كوكبنا باستخدام القواعد الثلاث.
- The 3Rs stand for Reduce, Reuse, and Recycle.
ترمز القواعد الثلاث إلى: التقليل، إعادة الاستخدام، وإعادة التدوير.
- "Reduce" means using less, so use things less.
التقليل يعني استخدام أقل، لذا استخدم الأشياء بشكل أقل.
- "Reuse" means using things again.
إعادة الاستخدام تعني استخدام الأشياء مرة أخرى.
- "Recycle" means turning old things into new ones.
إعادة التدوير تعني تحويل الأشياء القديمة إلى أشياء جديدة.
- We should apply what we learned everywhere.
يجب أن نطبق ما تعلمناه في كل مكان.

Lesson 2

Go Green

- We can all help keep our planet clean and healthy.
يمكننا جميعًا المساعدة في الحفاظ على كوكبنا نظيفًا وصحيًا.
- Use less paper and write on both sides of the page.
استخدم ورقًا أقل واكتب على كلا الوجهين من الصفحة.
- Send emails instead of paper letters.
أرسل رسائل البريد الإلكتروني بدلًا من الرسائل الورقية.
- Walk, ride a bike, or share rides to reduce pollution.
امش، أو اركب الدراجة، أو شارك الرحلات لتقليل التلوث.
- Use tote bags instead of plastic bags, and throw litter in the bin.
استخدم أكياس قماش بدلًا من الأكياس البلاستيكية، وألق القمامة في سلة المهملات.
- When we work together, our planet stays clean and safe.
عندما نعمل معًا، يبقى كوكبنا نظيفًا وآمنًا.

Lesson 3 (A)

Saving Resources

- Our Earth gives us important resources like water, electricity, and gas.
تمنحنا أرضنا موارد مهمة مثل الماء، الكهرباء، والغاز.
- We need to use them wisely so they don't run out.
نحتاج إلى استخدامها بحكمة حتى لا تنفذ.
- Save water, electricity, and gas by not wasting them.
وفر الماء، الكهرباء، والغاز بعدم إهدارها.
- Remind family and friends to use resources carefully.
ذكر العائلة والأصدقاء باستخدام الموارد بعناية.
- Small actions every day can make a big difference for our planet.
يمكن للأفعال الصغيرة التي نقوم بها كل يوم أن تُحدث فرقًا كبيرًا لكوكبنا.



Dictation

Lesson (1)

إعادة تدوير	كوكب
يطبّق	إعادة استخدام
كهرباء	يقلّل/يُخفّض
زجاجة	ورق
بعيدًا	بلاستيك
أستاذة/سيدة	منزل

Lesson (2)

رسالة بريد إلكتروني	تلوّث
خطاب/رسالة	رحلة
كيس/حقيبة قماش	قمامة/نفايات
الطبيعة	تسوّق
المناطق المحيطة	سلة المهملات

Lesson (3)

ماء	غاز
أسنان	موارد
أصدقاء	الأرض
صنبور/حنفية	كهرباء
فرو	عيد ميلاد
ممرضة	قميص

Lessons (4&5)

ضوء الشمس	نباتات
تربة	حيوانات
عالم	مكان
أشجار	زهور



Conjugation of Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
use		remember	
keep		ride	
walk		enjoy	
help		work	
brush		reduce	
throw		cook	
scare		give	
share		mean	
harm		send	
waste		plant	
grow		hurt	
remind		stay	
learn		refill	
make		protect	
care		can	
live		need	



هذا الجزء خاص بالتدريب على حل سؤال (Writing) في الورقة الامتحانية

Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

“Saving water”

1 Think of words related to the topic and sort them in the boxes below.

Nouns

1. teeth
2. water
3. drop

Verbs

1. save
2. turn off
3. use

Others

1. while
2. less
3. every day

2 Form your sentences.

Subject (Pronoun/Noun) + verb + the rest of the sentence (تكلمة الجملة)

1. We can save water by turning off the tap while brushing our teeth.
2. This helps us use less water.
3. Every drop of water matters.
4. We should save water every day.

3 Write your paragraph.

We can save water by turning off the tap while brushing our teeth. This helps us use less water. Every drop of water matters. We should save water every day.

اكتب فقرتك.

Write it yourself! اكتب بنفسك!

“Let’s save Earth”

Nouns

1.
2.
3.

Verbs

1.
2.
3.

Others

1.
2.
3.

Your sentences

1.
2.
3.
4.

Your paragraph

فقرتك



Important Paragraphs

Caring for the planet

clean – reuse – actions

We can keep our planet **clean**. We can do this by following the 3Rs. The 3Rs are Reduce, **Reuse**, and Recycle. Small **actions** can make a big difference.



Clean Earth

litter – surroundings – safe

We should always throw **litter** in the bin. This helps keep our **surroundings** clean. We should remind others to do the same. When we work together, we help our planet stay **safe** and green.



Saving gas

warm – waste – wisely

Gas helps us cook food. It also helps us stay **warm**. We should never **waste** gas. We should always use it **wisely**.



Our planet Earth

trees – animals – protect

Planting **trees** and flowers helps nature grow. We should be kind to **animals**, too. Let's **protect** animals and plants. This helps keep Earth beautiful.





Student's Book Activities

هذا الجزء خاص بأنشطة الكتاب المدرسي

1 Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 I wanted to play outside, it was raining.
a. or b. because c. but
- 2 We stayed at home it was too hot to go out.
a. and b. because c. so
- 3 She didn't study, she failed the test.
a. so b. or c. nor
- 4 You can have pizza pasta for lunch.
a. because b. or c. but

2 Sort the words in the box:

صنّف الكلمات في الصندوق:

term – bird – furniture – tiger – corn – purple – girl – storm

er	ir	ur	ar	or

3 Fill in the blanks using the words in the box:

املأ الفراغات مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

recycle – reduce – reuse – planet – apply

- 1 It's important to plastic bottles instead of throwing them away.
- 2 We can old bags and boxes to save materials.
- 3 To protect our, we must take care of nature and animals.
- 4 We need to the amount of waste we make every day.
- 5 The teacher told us to the new ideas in our project.

Test

on unit (2)

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Omar is trying to reduce pollution. ()
2. He writes on one side of the paper. ()
3. He walks to school with his friends instead of using the car. ()
4. He reminds his classmates to throw litter on the floor. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Plants help our stay green.
a. food b. water c. planet d. moon
2. Switch off the fans to save
a. electricity b. water c. gas d. soil
3. The test was easy, everyone finished quickly.
a. so b. by c. or d. because
4. They should what the teacher taught them.
a. forget b. ignore c. apply d. throw
5. The library wasn't open, was the shop.
a. and b. but c. nor d. so
6. They are happy and excited they are going on a trip.
a. because b. or c. and d. nor

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

place – care – soil – protect – healthy

We can all help animals and plants. Animals need food, water, and a safe ⁽¹⁾ to live. Plants need sunlight, water, and clean ⁽²⁾ to grow. When we care for them, our planet stays ⁽³⁾ and beautiful. Let's ⁽⁴⁾ animals and plants to keep Earth safe for everyone.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

We all need to care for Earth's resources like water, electricity, and gas. We can save water by turning off the tap. We can save electricity by switching off lights and fans. Never waste gas, and remind your family to do the same. Using these resources carefully keeps our planet clean and helps nature. When we all help, small actions make a big difference and protect Earth for future generations.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We all need to care for Earth's
a. resources b. computers c. clothes d. cars
2. The opposite of the underlined word "waste" is
a. run b. spend c. save d. lose

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the text?
.....

4. What happens when we use Earth's resources carefully?
.....

5. How can we save water?
.....



(C) Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. They didn't use much electricity, (but) did they waste food.
2. She was happy (so) her father took her to the zoo.
3. I wanted to help, (or) I cleaned the house.
4. The students didn't shout, (and) did they run in class.

6 Punctuate the following:

1. let's protect the animals and plants together

.....

2. what does "Reuse" mean, Amira

.....

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

"How to protect the planet"

(recycle – bottle – apply)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

(A) Listening



Play Audio

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

- Hala loves
 a. nature b. the world c. toys d. books
- Hala waters the and feeds the animals.
 a. children b. plants c. birds d. fish
- Hala thinks if we protect animals and birds, the planet will stay green and
 a. healthy b. angry c. big d. strong

(B) Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

Reuse – old – stand – paper

Teacher : Amir, what do the 3Rs ⁽¹⁾ for?

Amir : They stand for Reduce, ⁽²⁾, and Recycle.

Teacher : What does "Recycle" mean?

Amir : It means to turn ⁽³⁾ things into new ones, like ⁽⁴⁾ and plastic.

Teacher : That's how we can save our planet Earth.

(C) Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer:

- We wanted to make a cake, we bought flour and eggs.
 a. so b. or c. and d. nor
- The flowers died they didn't get enough water.
 a. and b. because c. so d. or
- Children, use Earth's resources because they can run out.
 a. quickly b. quietly c. wisely d. easily
- The is the place where we all live; we must keep it clean and safe.
 a. planet b. garden c. school d. hospital



4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

1. He was sad so he lost his toy. (.....)
2. Ahmed and Youssef were hungry, because they made sandwiches. (.....)
3. I didn't see the dog, but did I hear it. (.....)
4. My clothes got wet, nor I changed them. (.....)

(D) Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

My name is Farid. When I was young, we didn't use so much paper or plastic. We reused bags and bottles to save money and help nature. Today, I tell my grandchildren to walk or ride their bikes instead of taking cars. We must all keep our planet clean and green. Small things, like throwing litter in the bin, really make a big difference for our Earth.

(A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Farid used so much paper when he was young. ()
2. Farid tells his grandchildren to walk or ride their bikes. ()

(B) Choose the correct answer:

3. Farid bags and bottles.
a. reused b. recycled c. remade d. reduced
4. We must all keep our planet clean and
a. blue b. green c. gray d. sad
5. Throwing in the bin makes a big difference for Earth.
a. flowers b. trees c. litter d. letter

(E) Writing

6 Write an e-mail of FOUR (4) sentences:

- Your name is Hazem and your email address is (hazem@gmail.com). Your friend's name is Nader and his email address is (nader@gmail.com).

"Small actions, a big difference"

(turn off – save – gas – clean)

.....

.....

.....

.....

3 Unit

What's in the Package?



Learning Outcomes

نتائج التعلم

Speaking

- Use new vocabulary to describe different types of packaging
- Talk about countable and uncountable nouns in everyday situations
- Pronounce words with silent consonant letters (b/w) correctly

- استخدام مفردات جديدة لوصف أنواع التعبئة المختلفة
- التحدث عن الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة في مواقف يومية
- نطق كلمات بها الحروف الساكنة الصامتة (b/w) بشكل صحيح

Listening

- Use countable and uncountable nouns correctly in sentences
- Recognize and read words with silent consonant letters (b/w)

- استخدام الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة بشكل صحيح في جمل
- تمييز وقراءة كلمات بها الحروف الساكنة الصامتة (b/w)

Reading

- Read dialogs related to packaging and shopping
- Identify countable and uncountable nouns in context

- قراءة محادثات متعلقة بالتعبئة والتسوق
- تحديد الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة في سياق

Writing

- Write a narrative paragraph using countable and uncountable nouns
- Organize ideas clearly to describe objects, quantities, and packaging
- Create a poster about how to help others

- كتابة فقرة سردية باستخدام الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة
- تنظيم أفكار بشكل واضح لوصف الأشياء، الكميات، والتعبئة
- إنشاء ملصق عن كيفية مساعدة الآخرين

Lesson 1

Sharing with Families

Listen, look, and repeat:

استمع، انظر ورّد:



New Vocabulary

مفردات جديدة



neighborhood

حيّ



food packages

عبوات غذائية



vegetables

خضراوات



elderly

كبيّرة السن



delivery

توصيل



promise

يعدّ/وعد



climb the stairs

يصعد السلم

Extra Vocabulary

مفردات إضافية

market	سوق	sellers	بائعون	needs	احتياجات
peaches	خوخ	fruits	فواكه	cucumbers	خيار
shopping	التسوّق	carefully	بعناية	lady	سيدة
bananas	موز	bread	خبز	families	عائلات

Adjectives

الصفات

poor	فقير	busy	مزدحم	hard	شاق/صعب
------	------	------	-------	------	---------



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
prepare يُحضّر/يُجهّز	prepared	go يذهب	went
need يحتاج	needed	buy يشتري	bought
pack يعبئ	packed	show يعرض/يُظهر	showed
arrive يصل	arrived	choose يختار	chose
help يساعد	helped	give يعطي	gave
smile يبتسم	smiled	sit يجلس	sat

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

Two weeks ago, منذ أسبوعين,	Early in the morning, مبكرًا في الصباح,
full of ممتلئ بـ	call out ينادي
a kilo of كيلو من	talked with تحدّث مع
knocked on طرق على	do it again يفعل ذلك مرة أخرى
learn about يتعلّم عن/يتعرّف على	enjoyed the day استمتع باليوم

(Reading) main points

النقاط الأساسية في فقرة القراءة

- Kareem and Fatma prepared food packages for the poor people in their neighborhood. كريم وفاطمة قاما بتجهيز عبوات غذائية للأشخاص الفقراء في حيّهما.
- They went to the market early with their mother to buy food. ذهبا إلى السوق مبكرًا مع والدتهما لشراء الطعام.
- The market was full of sellers calling out and showing fruits and vegetables. كان السوق ممتلئًا بالبائعين ينادون ويعرضون فواكه وخضراوات.
- They bought bananas, peaches, tomatoes, cucumbers, and bread. اشتريا موزًا، خوخًا، طماطم، خيارًا، وخبزًا.
- They gave the food to the families and helped people, including an elderly lady. أعطوا الطعام للعائلات وساعدوا الناس، بما في ذلك سيدة كبيرة السن.



 Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Two weeks ago, Kareem and Fatma prepared food packages for the poor people in their neighborhood. Early in the morning, they went to the market with their mother to buy everything



they needed. The market was busy, full of sellers calling out and showing their vegetables and fruits. Kareem chose a kilo of bananas, while Fatma chose a kilo of peaches. They also bought tomatoes, cucumbers, and bread. After shopping, they packed the food carefully into bags. When they arrived at the neighborhood, they knocked on doors and gave the families the food. Kareem helped an elderly lady climb the stairs to her home, and Fatma gave fruits to some children who were smiling. After delivering everything, they sat and talked with the families to learn about their needs. It was hard work, but Kareem and Fatma enjoyed the day and promised to do it again.

منذ أسبوعين، جهّز كريم وفاطمة عبوات غذائية للفقراء في حيّهما. مبكرًا في الصباح، ذهبا إلى السوق مع والدتهما لشراء كل ما يحتاجونه. كان السوق مزدحمًا، ممتلئًا بالبائعين الذين ينادون ويعرضون خضراواتهم وفواكههم. اختار كريم كيلو من الموز، بينما اختارت فاطمة كيلو من الخوخ. اشترى أيضًا طماطم، خيارًا، وخبزًا. بعد التسوّق، قاما بتعبئة الطعام بعناية في أكياس. وعندما وصلا إلى الحيّ، طرقا الأبواب وأعطى الطعام للعائلات. ساعد كريم سيدة كبيرة السن على صعود السلم إلى منزلها، بينما أعطت فاطمة فواكه لبعض الأطفال الذين كانوا يبتسمون. بعد تسليم كل شيء، جلسا وتحدّثا مع العائلات للتعرف على احتياجاتهم. كان عملًا شاقًا، لكن كريم وفاطمة استمتعا باليوم ووعدا بفعل ذلك مرة أخرى.



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False: استمع واكتب (T) صحيح أو (F) خطأ:

- 1 Malak and Lamia prepared food packages. ()
- 2 They went to the park with their parents. ()
- 3 After packing the food, they delivered it to the homes. ()
- 4 They also helped an elderly man. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 I always buy from that bakery.
a. bread b. fruit c. rice d. vegetables
- 2 We the stairs at school to reach our class.
a. deliver b. prepare c. go d. climb
- 3 When I visit my friend, I on the door.
a. knock b. promise c. help d. sit
- 4 The market was very Many people were shopping there.
a. poor b. clean c. busy d. empty
- 5 I studied a lot for my exam. It was work.
a. hard b. quiet c. old d. short
- 6 Hana her mother to help her clean the house.
a. packed b. bought c. went d. promised
- 7 The restaurant's food service is fast.
a. neighborhood b. learning c. delivery d. door
- 8 I eat like peaches every night.
a. vegetables b. markets c. bags d. fruits

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

vegetables – elderly – stairs – packages – neighborhood

I'm Samy. In my ⁽¹⁾....., some people started a community project to help others. Some of them filled food ⁽²⁾..... with fruits and ⁽³⁾..... they bought from the market and delivered them to poor families. Others helped ⁽⁴⁾..... people. They promised to keep helping their neighborhood.

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النصّ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Last month, Salma and Omar decided to help others in their neighborhood. Early in the morning, they went to shops to buy food, clothes, and toys for poor families. The market where they bought vegetables and fruits was busy, full of people and sellers. After shopping, they packed everything into boxes. When they arrived at the neighborhood, Salma gave toys to the children, and Omar helped elderly ladies carry the boxes. They felt happy and continued helping people.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The opposite of the underlined word "Early" is
 a. late b. slowly c. happily d. quickly
- 2 The text is about children helping their
 a. neighborhood b. club c. school d. park

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 3 What did Salma and Omar do after shopping?

- 4 Why did they go to shops?

- 5 What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- What did kareem and Fatma prepare

Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

picnic	نزهة	tea	شاي	together	معًا
sandwich	شطيرة/ساندويتش	everyone	الجميع/كل شخص	dessert	تحلية
a carton of milk	كرتونة من الحليب	a slice of bread	شريحة من الخبز	butter	زبد
a piece of cheese	قطعة من الجبن	milk chocolate	شوكولاتة الحليب	a bar of chocolate	لوح من الشوكولاتة
a kilo of apples	كيلو من التفاح	a bottle of orange juice	زجاجة من عصير البرتقال	a pack of biscuits	عبوة من البسكويت

Adjectives الصفات

big	كبير الحجم	excited	متحمّس	happy	سعيد
-----	------------	---------	--------	-------	------

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
love يحب	loved	tell يخبر	told
add يضيف	added	take يأخذ	took
want يريد	wanted	get يحصل على	got
remind يُذكّر	reminded	bring يُحضّر	brought

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

that sounds fun!	هذا يبدو ممتعًا!	Good idea!	فكرة جيدة!
What else ...?	ماذا أيضًا ...؟	What kind ...?	أي نوع ...؟
prepared for	استعد/جهّز لـ	a lot of work	الكثير من العمل



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Preparing for the Picnic

الاستعداد للنزهة

Noura : Laila, I want to tell you how I prepared for the picnic with my mother last weekend.

ليلى، أريد أن أخبركِ كيف قُمتُ بالاستعداد للنزهة مع والدتي في نهاية الأسبوع الماضي.

Laila : Oh, that sounds fun! What did you do first?

أوه، هذا يبدو ممتعًا! ماذا فعلتِ أولاً؟

Noura : First, we bought a carton of milk for tea. Then my mother chose a bar of chocolate for dessert.

أولاً، اشترينا كرتونة من الحليب للشاي. ثم اختارت والدتي لوحًا من الشوكولاتة للتحلية.

Laila : Which kind did you get?

أي نوع حصلتِ عليه؟

Noura : The milk chocolate one. We also packed a big pack of biscuits because my cousins love them.

الشوكولاتة بالحليب. عبأنا أيضًا عبوة كبيرة الحجم من البسكويت لأن أبناء عمِّي يحبونه.

Laila : Good idea! What else did you add?

فكرة جيدة! ماذا أضفتِ أيضًا؟

Noura : We took a bottle of orange juice, a slice of bread, and a piece of cheese for each sandwich. My mother also reminded me to bring some butter.

أخذنا زجاجة من عصير البرتقال، شريحة من الخبز، وقطعة من الجبن لكل ساندويتش. ذكرتني والدتي أيضًا بإحضار بعض الزبد.

Laila : Did you add fruit too?

هل أضفتِ فاكهة أيضًا؟

Noura : Yes! We packed a kilo of apples for everyone. It was a lot of work, but we were excited and happy to prepare it together.

نعم! عبأنا كيلو من التفاح لكل شخص. كان هناك الكثير من العمل، لكننا كنا متحمسين وسعداء بتحضيره معًا.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 I bought chocolate cake for I like it so much.
 a. butter b. desert c. idea d. dessert
- 2 Marwan drank a bottle of apple
 a. juice b. bread c. cheese d. water
- 3 I added a of milk to the shopping trolley.
 a. slice b. carton c. piece d. bar
- 4 They a pack of biscuits.
 a. did b. went c. drank d. packed

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

added – slice – chocolate – sandwich – some

Dalia and Nahla went for a picnic in the park. They brought a carton of milk, a bar of ⁽¹⁾, and a pack of cookies to share. Dalia also ⁽²⁾ a bottle of juice, a piece of cheese, and a ⁽³⁾ of bread for each ⁽⁴⁾ They enjoyed themselves a lot.

3 Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 1 What did Noura and her mother buy for tea?
-

- 2 Which kind of chocolate did they get?
-

- 3 Why did they pack a big pack of biscuits?
-



Read, look, and notice:

اقرأ، انظر ولاحظ:



Language in use

Countable and Uncountable Nouns

الأسماء المعدودة والأسماء غير المعدودة

Countable nouns

الأسماء المعدودة

- They are things we can count. • هي أشياء يمكننا عدّها .

Ex: a pen, an apple, two chairs, five books

- We can use **a**, **an**, or **numbers** with the countable nouns, as follows:

• يمكننا استخدام **a** أو **an** أو الأعداد مع الأسماء المعدودة، كما يلي:

a

We use (**a**) before singular countable nouns starting with a consonant sound.

نستخدم (**a**) قبل الأسماء المفردة المعدودة التي تبدأ بصوت حرف ساكن.

Ex: – I have **a** banana in my lunchbox.



an

We use (**an**) before singular countable nouns starting with a vowel sound: (a-e-i-o-u).

نستخدم (**an**) قبل الأسماء المفردة المعدودة التي تبدأ بصوت حرف متحرك: (a-e-i-o-u).

Ex: – She bought **an** orange from the market.



numbers

We use “**numbers**” before plural countable nouns.

نستخدم «الأعداد» قبل أسماء الجمع المعدودة.

Ex: – There are **three** chairs.





Uncountable nouns الأسماء غير المعدودة

- They are things we cannot count because they don't have separate pieces.
• هي أشياء لا يمكننا عدّها لأنها لا تحتوي على أجزاء منفصلة.

Ex: water, rice, milk, sugar, cheese

- We can use the following expressions with the uncountable nouns:
• يمكننا استخدام التعبيرات الآتية مع الأسماء غير المعدودة:

a bar of قالب/لوح من

chocolate
شوكولاتة



a carton of كرتونة من

milk
حليب



Ex: – My mother chose **a bar of** – I bought **a carton of** milk from the chocolate. store.

a slice of شريحة من

bread
خبز



a glass of كوب من

water
ماء



Ex: – I ate 2 slices of bread in – Can I have **a glass of** water, please? breakfast.

a piece of قطعة من

cheese
جبين



a bottle of زجاجة من

juice
عصير



milk
حليب



water
ماء



Ex: – He ate **a piece of** cheese. – We took **a bottle of** orange juice.



- Some expressions can be used with countable and uncountable nouns:
يمكن استخدام بعض التعبيرات مع الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة:

عبوة من **a pack of**

biscuits

بسكويت



cookies

كعك / كوكيز



rice

أرز



pencil colors

ألوان خشب

كيلو من **a kilo of**

peaches

خوخ



bananas

موز



apples

تفاح



tomatoes

طماطم



Ex: – We packed **a pack of** biscuits.

– We packed **a kilo of** apples for everyone.



Note

- We use "How many + plural noun ...?" to ask about the number of people, things, animals, etc.

• نستخدم "How many" بمعنى «كم العدد + اسم جمع ...؟» للسؤال عن عدد الأشخاص، الأشياء، الحيوانات، إلخ.

Ex: – How many **books** are on the shelf?

– How many **packs** of biscuits did you eat?

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Malek is eating a/an It is healthy.
a. carrot b. egg c. apple d. orange
- 2 I bought two bottles of from the shop yesterday.
a. cheese b. rice c. juice d. bread
- 3 I eat apple for a snack.
a. an b. many c. five d. a
- 4 My brother gave me books.
a. three b. a c. an d. one
- 5 We need a of chocolate to make chocolate cake.
a. bottle b. glass c. bar d. slice
- 6 How many are in your pencil case?
a. pen b. pencil c. pencils d. eraser
- 7 There are six in the fridge.
a. bananas b. chocolate c. banana d. sugar
- 8 Can you weigh a of tomatoes?
a. piece b. bar c. bottle d. kilo

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 I added three (egg) to make the cake.
- 2 I have (an) pen to write.
- 3 I found (a) orange in the kitchen.
- 4 Noha is thirsty. She needs to drink a (pack) of water.
- 5 Can I have a (bottle) of pencil colors, please?
- 6 Hana ate a (glass) of bread and an egg for breakfast.
- 7 How many (carton) of milk did you take?
- 8 Salma had a piece (on) cheese.

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Last weekend, Kareem and his sister Ola prepared lunch for a family picnic. They packed a bottle of mango juice, three bars of chocolate, and a pack of biscuits for dessert. They also packed six slices of bread for sandwiches. Kareem added five bottles of water. They also brought a kilo of bananas and a carton of milk for tea. Everyone enjoyed the picnic and thanked Kareem and Ola for the delicious food they prepared.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Dessert is something, like chocolate or biscuits.
a. salty b. hot c. spicy d. sweet
- 2 The underlined pronoun "They" refers to
a. Kareem and Ola b. bottles c. bars d. biscuits

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 3 How many slices of bread did Kareem and Ola pack for sandwiches?
.....
- 4 Why did everyone thank Kareem and Ola?
.....
- 5 Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 Can you bring me an (onions)?
- 2 Hana gave me two (bottle) of cheese.

3 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من أربع (4) جمل مستخدماً الكلمات أدناه:

"A picnic with your family"

(pack – water – bread)

.....

.....

.....

Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

students	تلاميذ	first	أولاً	group	مجموعة
baskets	سلال	captain	قائد	art teacher	معلمة الرسم
lunch	وجبة غداء	cooler	مبرّد	ice	ثلج
food	طعام	Al Azhar Park	حديقة الأزهر	snack station	زُكن وجبات خفيفة

Adjectives الصفات

healthy	صحيّ	shiny	لامع	crunchy	مقرمش
colorful	ملوّن	fresh	طازج		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
share يشارك	shared	eat يأكل	ate
ask يطلب	asked	make يصنع	made
arrange يرتب	arranged	come يأتي	came
place يضع	placed		
open يفتح	opened		
pass يُمرّر	passed		
thank يشكر	thanked		
promise يَعِد	promised		
join ينضم	joined		



Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

set up	يُعد	held a picnic	نظّم نزهة
lined up	رتّب في صف	on top	فوق
a bunch of	مجموعة/ حزمة من	break into squares	يكسر/ يقسم إلى مربعات



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Al Azhar Park حديقة الأزهر

On Monday, our school held a picnic in Al Azhar Park. Students brought baskets to share. My teacher asked my group to set up a healthy lunch. We arranged vegetables and fruits first: shiny tomatoes and crunchy cucumbers beside colorful peaches and a bunch of bananas. Next, we made a small snack station. I placed a carton of milk and a bottle of orange juice in a cooler with ice. My friend lined up a slice of bread for each student and added a piece of cheese on top. Our class captain opened a pack of biscuits for dessert and passed a bar of chocolate to the art teacher to the break into squares. After eating, they packed fresh food and gave it to students who couldn't come. Everyone thanked us and promised to join next time again soon.



في يوم الإثنين، نظّمت مدرستنا نزهة في حديقة الأزهر. أحضر التلاميذ سلالاً للمشاركة. طلب معلّمي من مجموعتي إعداد وجبة غداء صحيّة. رتبنا الخضراوات والفواكه أولاً: طماطم لامعة وخياراً مقرمشاً بجانب خوخ ملوّن وحزمة من الموز. بعد ذلك، جهّزنا ركنًا صغيرًا للوجبات الخفيفة. وضعتُ كرتونة من الحليب وزجاجة من عصير البرتقال في مبرّد مع ثلج. صديقتي رتّبت في صف شريحة من الخبز لكل تلميذ، وأضافت قطعة من الجبن فوقها. قائد صفنا فتح عبوة من البسكويت للتحلية، ومرّر لوحًا من الشوكولاتة لمعلّمة الرسم لتقسيمه إلى مربّعات. بعد الأكل، عبّأوا طعامًا طازجًا وأعطوه للتلاميذ الذين لم يتمكنوا من الحضور. شكرنا الجميع ووعدوا بالانضمام إلينا في المرة القادمة قريبًا.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 I always eat food like fruits and vegetables.
a. angry b. bad c. unhealthy d. healthy
- 2 We ate and chocolate for dessert.
a. cucumbers b. biscuits c. tomatoes d. ice
- 3 At lunch, I a piece of cheese to my sister.
a. passed b. drank c. ate d. joined
- 4 When we go on a picnic, we place bottles of juice in a with ice.
a. cooler b. student c. park d. food

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

pack – join – sandwiches – milk – healthy

Last Sunday, our class enjoyed a picnic in the city garden. We prepared a ⁽¹⁾ meal with a carton of ⁽²⁾, a bottle of juice, and slices of bread for ⁽³⁾ I added a piece of cheese, some fruit, and a ⁽⁴⁾ of biscuits for dessert. Everyone shared and laughed together happily.

3 Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 1 When did the school hold a picnic?

.....

- 2 What did the class captain do?

.....

- 3 What did they pack after eating?

.....

B

Pronunciation

 Listen, look, and repeat:

استمع، انظر وردد:



Silent Letters (b,w)

(b,w) الحروف الصامتة

- **Silent b:** The letter “b” is hardly heard when it comes after “m” at the end of a word. حرف b الصامت: بالكاد أن يُسمع حرف “b” عندما يأتي بعد حرف “m” في نهاية الكلمة.

Words with silent “b”

كلمات بحرف “b” الصامت



lam**b**

حَمَل (خروف صغير)



thum**b**

إبهام



com**b**

مشط



clim**b**

يتسلَّق

- **Silent w:** The letter “w” is not pronounced when it comes before “r” at the beginning of a word.

حرف w الصامت: لا يتم نطق حرف “w” عندما يأتي قبل حرف “r” في بداية الكلمة.

Words with silent “w”

كلمات بحرف “w” الصامت



write

تكتب



wrong

خطأ



wrist

مِقْصَم



wrap

يغْلَف

Extra Words

كلمات إضافية

Silent (b)

plum**ber**

سَبَّك

Silent (w)

wrote

كَتَب

wrapper

غلاف

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 We arrived early to up the tables before the party started.
a. set b. break c. wake d. give
- 2 In the station, there were bottles of orange juice and apples.
a. street b. school c. park d. snack
- 3 I broke the bar of chocolate into
a. cartons b. baskets c. squares d. sandwiches

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Ali. Last Thursday, our class went on a picnic to the Nile Garden. We brought baskets filled with healthy food. I put a carton of milk and a bottle of apple juice in a cooler. My friends brought slices of bread, some vegetables, and a bunch of bananas. For dessert, we shared a pack of biscuits and a bar of chocolate. After lunch, we prepared a box of fresh fruit for a poor family in our neighborhood, and they thanked us.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The opposite of the underlined adjective "healthy" is ".....".
a. nice b. good c. hot d. unhealthy
- 2 Ali's friends brought a of bananas.
a. carton b. bunch c. pack d. bar

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 3 What did they share for dessert?

.....

- 4 What is the text mainly about?

.....

- 5 What does the underlined pronoun "I" refer to?

.....

اقرأ ولاحظ:

Read and notice:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

kitchen	مطبخ	counter	منضدة/طاولة	lettuce	خس
salad	سلطة	importance	أهمية	cleanliness	نظافة
plate	طبق مسطح	proudly	بفخر	meal	وجبة
steps	درجات السلم	others	آخرون	hands	أيادي

Adjectives الصفات

responsible	مسئول	delicious	لذيذ	finished	منتهي/جاهز
-------------	-------	-----------	------	----------	------------

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
wash يغسل	washed	feel يشعر	felt
pick يختار/يلتقط	picked	say يقول	said
carry يحمل	carried	know يعرف	knew
stop يتوقف	stopped	do يفعل/يقوم	did
explain يشرح	explained	can يستطيع	could
create يبتكر/يصنع	created	is يكون (للمفرد)	was

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

decided to	قرر أن	Let's call the family for	هيا ندعو العائلة لـ
------------	--------	---------------------------	---------------------



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Helping Mom مساعدة أمي

عنوان Title

Beginning (When? Who? Where?)

البداية (متى؟ من؟ أين؟)

Last week, Reem helped her mother in the kitchen.



First, she washed her hands carefully. Then, she placed the bread slices on the counter. Her mother picked some cheese, and Reem washed the lettuce for the sandwiches. Together, they decided to add tomatoes to the salad. Reem asked if she could make the sandwiches, and her mother smiled. As she stopped, not knowing what to do next, her mother explained the importance of cleanliness. Reem carefully made the sandwiches and held the plate proudly. She felt happy seeing the finished meal. "Let's call the family for lunch!" her mother said.

Middle (What happened?)

الوسط (ماذا حدث؟)

Ending (How did it finish? How did you feel?)

النهاية (كيف انتهت؟ كيف شعرت؟)

Her mother was happy to see her being responsible in the kitchen. Reem smiled, knowing she helped create a delicious meal.

الأسبوع الماضي، ساعدت ريم والدتها في المطبخ. أولاً، غسلت يديها بعناية. ثم، وضعت شرائح الخبز على الطاولة. التقطت والدتها بعض الجبن، وغسلت ريم الخس للساندويتشات. قررتا معاً إضافة الطماطم إلى السلطة. سألت ريم إن كان بإمكانها صنع الساندويتشات، فابتسمت والدتها. وحين توقفت، لا تعلم ماذا تفعل بعد ذلك، شرحت لها والدتها أهمية النظافة. أعدت ريم الساندويتشات بعناية وأمسكت الطبق بفخر. شعرت بالسعادة لرؤية الوجبة جاهزة. قالت والدتها: «هيا ندعو العائلة للغداء!». كانت والدتها سعيدة برؤيتها مسئولة في المطبخ. ابتسمت ريم، وهي تعلم أنها ساعدت في صنع وجبة لذيذة.

Read and notice the following steps:

اقرأ ولاحظ الخطوات الآتية:

Steps of writing a narrative paragraph

خطوات كتابة فقرة سردية



- Don't forget to add the following in your narrative writing:

لا تنس إضافة ما يلي إلى كتابتك السردية:

1 Title: Choose a good title for the paragraph.

العنوان: اختر عنواناً جيداً للفقرة.

2 Beginning: Answer questions with (When? Who? Where?) like:

البداية: أجب عن الأسئلة التي تبدأ بـ (متى؟ من؟ أين؟) مثل:



Unit 3

What's in the Package? 2nd term

- When was it? (yesterday, last weekend, etc.) متى كان ذلك؟ (أمس، نهاية الأسبوع الماضي، إلخ.)
- Where did you go? (market, park, etc.) أين ذهبت؟ (سوق، حديقة، إلخ.)

3 **Middle:** Answer questions with "What" like: What happened? – What did you do first? – What did you do next?

الوسط: أجب عن الأسئلة التي تبدأ بـ "ماذا" مثل: ماذا حدث؟ - ماذا فعلت أولاً؟ - ماذا فعلت بعد ذلك؟

4 **Ending:** How did it finish? How did you feel?

النهاية: كيف انتهت؟ كيف شعرت؟

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

How to Help Others

كيفية مساعدة الآخرين

title عنوان

picture صورة



Pack food and share with others
تعبئة الطعام ومشاركته مع الآخرين



Help my father carry bags
مساعدة والدي في حمل الحقائب

idea فكرة



Help my mom in the kitchen
مساعدة أمي في المطبخ



Help my grandmother climb the steps
مساعدة جدتي في صعود درجات السلم

Read and notice the following tips:

اقرأ ولاحظ النصائح الآتية:

Tips for making a poster about ways to help others

نصائح لصنع ملصق حول طرق مساعدة الآخرين



Your poster should include ...

يجب أن يتضمن ملصقك ...

- a clear title.

عنواناً واضحاً.

Ex: How to Help Others

- pictures.

صوراً.

- 3-4 ideas.

3-4 أفكار.

Ex: Help my mom in the kitchen

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Mom cuts tomatoes on the in the kitchen.
a. door b. chair c. window d. counter
- 2 Our teacher the importance of helping others.
a. stopped b. smiled c. explained d. picked
- 3 I help my father bags.
a. climb b. carry c. eat d. cook
- 4 is very important. So, I always wash my hands.
a. Cleanliness b. Meal c. Basket d. Picnic

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

lettuce – placed – create – find – carefully

Yesterday, Soha joined her mother in the kitchen to prepare dinner. She washed her hands and ⁽¹⁾ slices of bread on the table. Her mother brought cheese and fresh ⁽²⁾ Soha added tomatoes to the sandwiches. She made the sandwiches ⁽³⁾ Soha smiled proudly as she helped ⁽⁴⁾ a delicious meal.

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

1 i always help my mom in the kitchen

2 how does reem help others?

4 Write a narrative paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة سردية من أربع (4) جمل مستخدماً الكلمات أدناه:

"Helping others"
(mom – climb – bags)

Unit 3 Review

Vocabulary

neighborhood	حيّ	promise	يَعِدُ/وَعْد	vegetables	خضراوات
delivery	توصيل	peaches	خوخ	cucumbers	خيار
market	سوق	dessert	تحلية	elderly	كبيّرة السن
lady	سيدة	butter	زبد	counter	منضدة/طاولة
healthy	صحيّ	fresh	طازج	proudly	بفخر
cleanliness	نظافة	baskets	سلال	salad	سلطة
picnic	نزهة	crunchy	مقرمش	meal	وجبة
food packages	عبوات غذائية	climb the stairs	يصعد السلم	snack station	رُكن وجبات خفيفة

Countable and Uncountable Nouns

A&An – Numbers with countable nouns

(a) + a singular countable noun starting with a consonant sound

Ex: – I have **a** banana in my lunchbox.

(an) + a singular countable noun starting with a vowel sound

Ex: – She bought **an** orange from the market.

number + a plural countable noun

Ex: – There are **three** chairs.

Expressions with countable/uncountable nouns

a bar of
chocolate

a carton of
milk

a kilo of
peaches/
bananas/apples/
tomatoes

a pack of
biscuits/cookies/
rice/ pencil
colors

a slice of
bread

a piece of
cheese

a bottle of
juice/milk/water

a glass of
water



Reading in Points

Lesson 1 Sharing with Families

- Kareem and Fatma packed food for poor families in their neighborhood.
كريم وفاطمة قاما بتعبئة الطعام للعائلات الفقيرة في حيّهما.
- Early in the morning, they went to the market with their mother.
مبكراً في الصباح، ذهبا إلى السوق مع والدتهما.
- The market was crowded with sellers selling fresh fruits and vegetables.
كان السوق مزدحماً ببائعين يبيعون فواكه وخضراوات طازجة.
- They bought bread, bananas, peaches, tomatoes, and cucumbers.
اشترى خبزا، موزا، خوفاً، طماطم، وخيارا.
- They shared the food with families, helped an old woman, and promised to help others again.
شاركوا الطعام مع العائلات، ساعدوا سيدة كبيرة السن، ووعدوا بمساعدة الآخرين مرة أخرى.

Lesson 3 (A) A School Picnic

- The school held a picnic in Al Azhar Park on Monday.
نظمت المدرسة نزهة في حديقة الأزهر يوم الإثنين.
- Students brought baskets and prepared a healthy lunch together.
أحضروا التلاميذ سلالاً وجعلوا غداءً صحياً معاً.
- They prepared vegetables, fruits, and snacks like biscuits and chocolate.
جهزوا خضراوات، فواكه، ووجبات خفيفة مثل البسكويت والشوكولاتة.
- They packed drinks such as milk and orange juice in a cooler.
عبئوا مشروبات مثل الحليب وعصير البرتقال في مبرّد.
- After eating, they gave fresh food to the students who couldn't come.
بعد الأكل، أعطوا طعاماً طازجاً للتلاميذ الذين لم يتمكنوا من الحضور.

Lessons 4&5 Reem Helps her Mom/Think and Create:A poster

- Reem helped her mother in the kitchen last week.
ساعدت ريم والدتها في المطبخ الأسبوع الماضي.
- She washed her hands and put the bread slices on the counter.
غسلت يديها ووضعت شرائح الخبز على الطاولة.
- Her mother brought cheese, and Reem washed the lettuce for the sandwiches.
أحضرت والدتها الجبن، وغسلت ريم الخس للساندويتشات.
- Reem made the sandwiches carefully and felt proud of her work.
صنعت ريم الساندويتشات بعناية وشعرت بالفخر بعملها.
- Her mother was happy because Reem was responsible.
كانت والدتها سعيدة لأن ريم كانت مسئولة.



Dictation

Lesson (1)

عبوات غذائية	حيّ
كبيرة السن	خضراوات
يَعد/وعد	توصيل
يصعد السلم	بائعون
احتياجات	مزدحم

Lesson (2)

تحلية	لوح من الشوكولاتة
كيلو من التفاح	قطعة من الجبن
عبوة من البسكويت	متحمّس
كرتونة من الحليب	شريحة من الخبز
زجاجة من عصير البرتقال	نزهة

Lesson (3)

مقرّمش	سلال
ثلج	مجموعة
مبرّد	طازج
حديقة الأزهر	ملوّن
صحّي	رُكن وجبات خفيفة

Lessons (4&5)

حَسّ	سلطة
مستول	بفخر
وجبة	منضدة/طاولة
نظافة	أهمية



Conjugation of Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
prepare		give	.....
need		share	.....
pack		ask	.....
arrive		arrange	.....
help		place	.....
smile		open	.....
go		pass	.....
buy		thank	.....
show		promise	.....
choose		join	.....
sit		make	.....
love		wash	.....
add		pick	.....
tell		feel	.....
remind		stop	.....
get		explain	.....
bring		create	.....
come		say	.....



Writing Station

حلها صح

هذا الجزء خاص بالتدريب على حل سؤال (Writing) في الورقة الامتحانية

Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

“Sharing with others”

1 Think of words related to the topic and sort them in the boxes below.

فكر في كلمات ذات صلة بالموضوع وصرّفها في الصناديق أدناه.

Nouns

1. food 2. families 3. neighborhood

1. bought

2. packed 3. like

1. last

2. with

3. poor

Others

2 Form your sentences.

كوّن جملتك.

Subject (Pronoun/Noun) + verb + the rest of the sentence (تكملة الجملة)

1. Sami bought food from the market last week.

2. Then, he packed it.

3. He shared it with poor families in his neighborhood.

4. He likes helping others.

3 Write your paragraph.

اكتب فقرتك.

Samy bought food from the market last week. Then, he packed it. He shared it with poor families in his neighborhood. He likes helping others.

Write it yourself! اكتب بنفسك!

“Your last picnic”

Nouns

1. 2. 3.

2.

3.

1.

2.

3.

Others

Your sentences

1.

3.

2.

4.

Your paragraph

فقرتك



Important Paragraphs

Helping people in my neighborhood

bread – poor – carry

Last weekend, my friends and I bought fruits and **bread**. We prepared food. We shared them with **poor** families in our neighborhood. My brother helped an elderly man **carry** bags.



Your visit to Al Azhar Park

picnic – healthy – dessert

Our school had a **picnic** in Al Azhar Park last month. Students brought baskets of **healthy** food. They arranged fruits and vegetables. For **dessert**, they had a bar of chocolate.



Helping your mother

kitchen – made – meal

I helped my mother in the **kitchen**. I **made** sandwiches. I also washed lettuce and tomatoes for the salad. We both felt happy with the delicious **meal**.



Ways to help others

food – father – steps

It is important to help others. I pack **food** and share it with others. I help my **father** carry bags. I help my grandmother climb the **steps**.





Student's Book Activities

هذا الجزء خاص بأنشطة الكتاب المدرسي

1 Fill in the missing letters:

أكمل الحروف الناقصة:

lam__

__rite

com__

__rong

__rist

clim__

thum__

2 Fill in the blanks using the words in the box:

املأ الفراغات مستخدمًا الكلمات في الصندوق:

climb the stairs – neighborhood – vegetables – food packages – elderly

- 1 Every weekend, we visit the to help people in need.
- 2 The volunteers carried filled with rice, beans, and canned food.
- 3 My brother helps the lady who lives next door.
- 4 The children had to to reach the top floor.
- 5 We bought fresh from the market to cook for lunch.

3 Fill in the blanks with (a, a slice of, a bottle of, an):

املأ الفراغات مستخدمًا (a, a slice of, a bottle of, an):

- 1 I ate sandwich after lunch.
- 2 She has orange in her bag.
- 3 Can I have water, please?
- 4 He cut bread for breakfast.

Test on unit (3)

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Hana and her sister prepared for a picnic. ()
2. They bought two cartons of juice. ()
3. They also bought a bar of chocolate. ()
4. They took a kilo of cucumbers for everyone. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Food have bread, fruit, and juice.
a. squares b. stairs c. cousins d. packages
2. My mother always buys fresh from the market.
a. promises b. stairs c. vegetables d. students
3. I live in a nice People there are kind.
a. step b. delivery c. package d. neighborhood
4. I was thirsty. I drank a bottle of
a. water b. chocolate c. bananas d. cheese
5. The seller gave me apple to taste.
a. three b. a c. an d. kilo
6. I have a of bread and a piece of cheese in my lunchbox.
a. slice b. bottle c. kilo d. carton



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

added – juice – water – sandwiches – washed

Last weekend, Salma helped her mother prepare lunch. She ⁽¹⁾ her hands because cleanliness is very important. Then, she prepared slices of bread to make ⁽²⁾ She washed some apples to make apple ⁽³⁾ They ⁽⁴⁾ cucumbers to the salad. Salma and her family enjoyed the meal.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

On Sunday, our class went on a picnic to the Giza Zoo. We carried baskets full of healthy food to share. First, we arranged the vegetables and fruits. We took shiny tomatoes, green cucumbers, and a bunch of bananas. I placed a carton of milk and a bottle of mango juice in the cooler. My friend made sandwiches with bread and cheese. After lunch, we ate biscuits and chocolate. We fed some animals there. We gave the monkeys some bananas.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about a
a. market b. neighborhood c. picnic d. school
2. The underlined word “placed” means “.....”.
a. took b. found c. bought d. put

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What did they have after lunch?

.....

4. Write the fruits and vegetables mentioned in the text.

.....

5. What does the underlined word “there” refer to?

.....

**(C) Writing****5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. I put a (bar) of cookies in the kitchen.
2. I write with (an) pen.
3. Sara has a (pieces) of cheese in her bag.
4. There are five (book) on the desk.

6 Punctuate the following:

1. Fatma and laila bought two kilos of rice
.....

2. did you add fruit and vegetables
.....

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

“Sharing and helping others”

(food – elderly – carry)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

(A) Listening



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

1. Dalia likes to others every day.
a. carry b. climb c. pack d. help
2. She packs and shares it with people in need.
a. milk b. water c. food d. juice
3. She also helps her climb the steps.
a. grandmother b. grandfather c. mother d. father

(B) Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

prepare – bottle – bread – Park

Malek: Where did your school hold a picnic last month?

Adam: We went to Al Azhar ⁽¹⁾ It was really beautiful.

Malek: What did your group ⁽²⁾ for lunch?

Adam: We arranged vegetables and made sandwiches with ⁽³⁾ and cheese. What did your group pack for your picnic?

Malek: We packed a carton of milk and a ⁽⁴⁾ of orange juice in a cooler with ice.

(C) Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. My little brother is learning how to stairs.
a. help b. climb c. walk d. run
2. My stomach hurts because I ate a big of biscuits last night.
a. pack b. kilo c. bottle d. glass
3. There are tomatoes on the counter.
a. an b. one c. ten d. a
4. people need help more than young people.
a. Big b. Strong c. Little d. Elderly

**4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:**

1. I had an sandwich for dinner. (.....)
2. Do you want a bottle at milk? (.....)
3. Give me a bar of cheese, please. (.....)
4. There are twenty peach in the fridge. (.....)

(D) ■■ Reading Comprehension**5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Last weekend, Laila helped her mother prepare lunch at home. She started by washing her hands and washing the fresh vegetables. Then, she placed the bread on the table. Her mother cut the cucumbers and tomatoes. Laila made the sandwiches carefully and added some salad and juice for everyone. Her mother smiled proudly. She was happy to see Laila being responsible. Laila felt proud to help her family.

(A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Last weekend, Laila helped her mother prepare lunch at home. ()
2. Laila started by washing the fresh fruits. ()

(B) Choose the correct answer:

3. Laila's mother cut the and tomatoes.
 a. peaches b. apples c. bananas d. cucumbers
4. The opposite of the underlined word "happy" is
 a. careful b. sad c. responsible d. great
5. Laila felt to help her family.
 a. angry b. tired c. proud d. bored

(E) ✍ Writing**6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences:**

"Shopping for a picnic"
 (bought – carton – butter – dessert)

.....

.....

.....

Review 1

Vocabulary Summary

Unit 1 This is Where I Live



environment



building



city



village



oasis

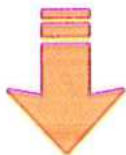


river

Unit 2 Our World, Our Responsibility



recycle



reduce



reuse



planet



apply

Unit 3 What's in the Package?



neighborhood



food packages



vegetables



elderly



delivery



promise



climb the stairs

Language Summary

Unit 1 This is Where I Live

Past Simple Tense

- The past tense tells us about actions that already happened.

Subject + the 2nd form of the verb ...

Affirmative



Ex: – They **enjoyed** the quiet streets.

– Omar **took** photos of the houses.

Negative



Subject + did not (didn't) + base verb ...
was not (wasn't)/were not (weren't)

Ex: – We **weren't** at the shopping center yesterday.

– Maha **didn't** buy a new dress.

– He **wasn't** at the party yesterday.

Yes/No question



Did + subject + base verb ...?
Was/Were + subject

Ex: – **Did** you visit your uncle last week?

– **Were** the tickets expensive?

– **Was** Maher excited for the surprise?

Wh-question



Question word + did + subject + base verb ...?
was/were + subject

Ex: – Where **did** they go yesterday?

– How **was** the weather yesterday?



Unit 2 Our World, Our Responsibility

Conjunctions

- Conjunctions are words that join parts of a sentence together, helping ideas flow smoothly.

- We use “**nor**” to add a second negative idea.

nor

Ex: – We didn’t throw trash on the ground, **nor** did we pick flowers.

- We use “**so**” to show a result.

so

Ex: – We planted more trees, **so** the air became cleaner.

- We use “**because**” to show a reason or cause.

because

Ex: – We recycle used paper **because** this helps the environment.

Unit 3 What’s in the Package?

Countable and Uncountable Nouns

A&An – Numbers with countable nouns

(**a**) + a singular countable noun starting with a consonant sound

Ex: – I need **a** chair to sit on.

(**an**) + a singular countable noun starting with a vowel sound

Ex: – She eats **an** apple in the morning.

number + a plural countable noun

Ex: – I have **two** blue pens.

Expressions with countable/uncountable nouns

a bar of
chocolate

a carton of
milk

a kilo of
peaches/
bananas/apples/
tomatoes

a pack of
biscuits/cookies/
rice/ pencil
colors

a slice of
bread

a piece of
cheese

a bottle of
juice/milk/water

a glass of
water

(A) Listening

نصوص الاستماع بنهاية الكتاب



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Fatma lives in a small city. ()
2. Fatma's family knows all their neighbors. ()
3. The city wasn't noisy or busy. ()
4. Fatma didn't realize that each place has advantages and challenges. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Sohaila is very You can leave the children with her.
a. careless b. angry c. responsible d. unkind
2. The baby was looking around to explore the
a. holidays b. songs c. challenges d. surroundings
3. We should our bags now. We're leaving in an hour.
a. pack b. draw c. raise d. solve
4. I didn't buy bread, did I buy rice.
a. because b. so c. then d. nor
5. I gave my friend a of chocolate for her birthday.
a. bar b. slice c. bottle d. glass
6. you have a good time at the party yesterday?
a. Did b. Have c. Do d. Will



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

markets – elderly – delivered – sellers – promised

Some volunteers worked together to prepare food packages for people in need. They bought food from local ⁽¹⁾ calling out in the market. They packed the food carefully. Later, they ⁽²⁾ the packages to people's homes and helped ⁽³⁾ neighbors climb the stairs. They ⁽⁴⁾ to continue helping others.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Going green means taking care of our planet in everyday life. It's good to plant trees around homes to keep the air clean. Recycling bottles, paper, and cans helps keep our surroundings clean. Using metal or glass bottles and cloth bags reduces plastic waste. Walking or cycling to school or work saves fuel, which reduces pollution. Instead of throwing away old clothes, we can donate or reuse them. When we reduce waste and use resources wisely, we make Earth a better home for everyone.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The text mainly talks about ways to Earth.
a. visit b. protect c. paint d. explore
- The underlined word "cycling" means "riding a".
a. car b. train c. bike d. ship

(B) Answer the following questions:

- Why is saving fuel important for the environment?

.....

- How can you reduce plastic waste in your everyday life?

.....

- How do you think recycling and reusing help the planet?

.....

**(C) Writing****5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. Laila and Mona (be) happy at the park yesterday.
2. I studied hard, (because) I passed the exam.
3. Did the sellers (tells) them stories? – Yes, they did.
4. I ate a (bottle) of cheese for breakfast.

6 Punctuate the following:

1. when they arrived, they gave the families the food

.....

2. which kind of chocolate did they get

.....

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

“A day at the village ”

(sunny – path – photos)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review 1

Test (2)

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Maya and her friends prepared for a picnic. ()
2. Maya forgot to bring any food. ()
3. Maya's friends brought a basket of oranges. ()
4. They were dancing while getting everything ready. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The students up before entering the class.
a. wake b. give c. line d. go
2. I could see a rainbow in the
a. distance b. happiness c. hope d. time
3. We home just in time for dinner. We weren't late.
a. get b. got c. gets d. getting
4. I had a match, I went to the club.
a. and b. or c. so d. why
5. The Pyramids were built thousands of years
a. next b. last c. then d. ago
6. Think before making any decision.
a. wisely b. badly c. carelessly d. angrily

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

fields – palm trees – sailed – riverbank – beach

Hana went to the river with her father. They took a small boat and
(1) on the calm water. They saw farmers planting crops in wide
(2) nearby. Hana was amazed to see the tall (3) Hana
and her father rested on the (4) and had some healthy snacks.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Earth gives us valuable resources like sunlight, wind, and water. We must use them wisely. We can save water by turning off taps, fixing leaks, and using buckets instead of hoses. Sunlight and wind are sources of renewable energy. To save energy, we should switch off lights, fans, and devices when not in use and choose energy-saving bulbs. We must also reduce pollution to protect natural resources. When we care for Earth's gifts, we live healthier and happier lives.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To water, we should fix leaks.
a. find b. waste c. save d. lose
2. We must reduce to protect natural resources.
a. pollution b. population c. production d. education

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. How can we save energy according to the text?

.....

4. What does the underlined word "gifts" refer to?

.....

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

**(C) Writing****5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. Amira **(bring)** some cookies with her last weekend.
2. Asma **(don't)** come to my wedding. She was abroad.
3. Ahmed ate **(an)** pear in the morning.
4. Noha went to the hospital **(and)** she felt ill.

6 Punctuate the following:

1. Last friday, Youssef went on a trip to the Nile River
.....
2. What are the 3Rs, miss Omnia
.....

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

“A trip to the mountains”

(relax – view – peaceful)

.....

.....

.....

.....

4 Unit

Let's Celebrate

Learning Outcomes

نتائج التعلم

Speaking

- Talk about different celebrations using simple sentences
- Use adjectives to describe people, objects, and events
- Pronounce plural nouns with final -s correctly (/s/, /z/, /Iz/)

• التحدث عن احتفالات مختلفة باستخدام جمل بسيطة
• استخدام صفات لوصف أشخاص، أشياء، وأحداث
• نطق أسماء منتهية بحرف -s بشكل صحيح (/s/, /z/, /Iz/)

Listening

- Listen carefully to short texts or dialogs about celebrations and blogs
- Identify key details such as events, dates, activities, and descriptions
- Recognize adjectives and plural nouns with final -s in spoken sentences
- Distinguish between the /s/, /z/, and /Iz/ sounds in words

• الاستماع بعناية إلى نصوص قصيرة أو محادثات عن احتفالات ومدونات
• تحديد تفاصيل رئيسية مثل الأحداث، التواريخ، الأنشطة، والأوصاف
• تعرّف صفات وأسماء الجمع المنتهية بحرف -s في جمل منطوقة
• التمييز بين الأصوات /s/, /z/, و /Iz/ في كلمات

Reading

- Read short texts about different celebrations and understand the main idea
- Identify adjectives and words with final -s in context
- Read and understand blog examples, recognizing greetings, body, and conclusion

• قراءة نصوص قصيرة عن احتفالات مختلفة وفهم الفكرة الرئيسية
• تحديد صفات وكلمات منتهية بحرف -s في سياق
• قراءة وفهم أمثلة مدونة، للتعرف على التحيات، نص المدونة، والخاتمة

Writing

- Write a blog about a celebration
- Use adjectives to describe people, objects, and events
- Form plural nouns using final -s correctly
- Organize ideas clearly with a beginning, middle, and closing
- Design a "Thank You" card to the teacher

• كتابة مدونة عن احتفال
• استخدام صفات لوصف أشخاص، أشياء، وأحداث
• تكوين صيغة الجمع باستخدام حرف -s النهائية بشكل صحيح
• تنظيم الأفكار بوضوح مع مقدمة، وسط، وخاتمة
• تصميم بطاقة شكر للمعلم

Lesson 1

Family Gathering

Listen, look, and repeat:

استمع، انظر وردّد:



Play Audio

New Phrases

عبارات جديدة



exchange gifts

يتبادلون الهدايا



perform music

يعزفون/يؤدون الموسيقى



play a game

يلعبون لعبة



eat special food

يأكلون طعامًا خاصًا/مميزًا



socialize with friends

يتواصلون اجتماعيًا مع الأصدقاء

Extra Vocabulary

مفردات إضافية

family gathering	تجمّع عائلي	everyone	الجميع	fun	متعة/مرح
chess	شطرنج	cake	كعك	cousins	أولاد خال/عمّ
grilled chicken	دجاج مشوي	fruit salad	سلطة فاكهة	hide-and-seek	الغميضة/الاستغماية

Adjectives

الصفات

amazing

مذهل

delicious

لذيذ

**Conjugation of verbs** تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
enjoy يستمتع	enjoyed	win يفوز	won
talk يتحدث	talked	bring يُحضِر	brought
listen يستمع	listened		
clap يصفق	clapped		
cheer يهتف/يشجع	cheered		
remember يتذكر	remembered		

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

sat together جلسنا معًا/سويًا	got to تمكنا من
played ... with لعب ... مع	all day طوال اليوم
a game of لعبة	on his oud علي العود الخاص به

**(Conversation) main points**

النقاط الأساسية في المحادثة



- Salma and Amr are talking about the family gathering they had last weekend.
سلمى وعمرو يتحدثان عن التجمّع العائلي الذي حدث في نهاية الأسبوع الماضي.
- They sat together, talked, and listened to Amr's uncle perform music.
جلسوا معًا، تحدثوا، واستمعوا إلى عمّ عمرو وهو يعزف الموسيقى.
- Everyone clapped and cheered. They played games like chess and hide-and-seek.
صفّق الجميع وهتفوا. لعبوا ألعابًا مثل الشطرنج والغميضة.
- The food was delicious; they ate special food like grilled chicken and cake.
كان الطعام لذيذًا! أكلوا طعامًا مميزًا مثل الدجاج المشوي والكعك.
- Amr brought fruit salad. They exchanged gifts and socialized all day.
أحضّر عمرو سلطة فاكهة. تبادلوا الهدايا وتواصلوا اجتماعيًا طوال اليوم.

Conversation



A Day with Family and Friends

يوم مع العائلة والأصدقاء

اقرأ ولاحظ:

Read and notice:



Salma

1 Hi Amr! Did you enjoy the family gathering we had last weekend? مرحبًا يا عمرو! هل استمتعت بالتجمع العائلي الذي أقمناه نهاية الأسبوع الماضي؟

Yes, it was amazing! We sat together, talked, and even
2 listened to my uncle perform music on his oud.

نعم، كان ذلك مذهلًا جلسنا معًا، تحدثنا، وحتى استمعنا إلى عمي وهو يعزف على العود.



Amr



3 I remember! Everyone clapped and cheered. أنا أتذكر! صفق الجميع وهتفوا.

The games were fun too. I played a game of chess with
4 Kareem, and he won. الألعاب كانت ممتعة أيضًا. لعبت لعبة شطرنج مع كريم، وفاز هو.



5 I played a game of hide-and-seek with my cousins, and we all enjoyed it. لعبت لعبة الغميضة مع أولاد عمي، واستمتعنا بها جميعًا.

The food was delicious. We got to eat special food like
6 grilled chicken, and cake. كان الطعام لذيذًا. لقد تمكنا من أكل طعام مميز مثل الدجاج المشوي، والكعك.



7 Did you bring anything? هل أحضرت أي شيء؟

I brought fruit salad, and everyone liked it. We also exchanged gifts and socialized with friends and family all day.

أحضرت سلطة فاكهة، وأحبها الجميع. تبادلنا الهدايا أيضًا وتواصلنا اجتماعيًا مع الأصدقاء والعائلة طوال اليوم.



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False: استمع واكتب (T) صحيح أو (F) خطأ:



- 1 The family gathering was at Mazen's grandparents' house. ()
- 2 Mazen's family listened to Mazen's mom perform music on her guitar. ()
- 3 The children played hide-and-seek in the kitchen. ()
- 4 After lunch, they exchanged gifts and took many photos. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Noha always wins when we play
a. chess b. cake c. gathering d. salad
- 2 Everyone happily when the singer finished the song.
a. brought b. clapped c. liked d. exchanged
- 3 We gifts on our birthdays.
a. paint b. exchange c. sing d. sit
- 4 On weekends, I like to with my friends at the park.
a. perform b. bring c. cry d. socialize
- 5 The children love to play after school.
a. hide-and-seek b. gathering c. homework d. cousin
- 6 We had chicken and rice for lunch.
a. tired b. long c. grilled d. funny
- 7 The band will perform in the school show.
a. music b. game c. gifts d. friend
- 8 During the family, we sang and watched different movies.
a. club b. room c. sheet d. gathering

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدمًا الكلمات في الصندوق:

sat – special – gifts – socialized – cheered

Yesterday, my class went to a beautiful park in the morning. We played football, ran around, and ⁽¹⁾ with friends near the trees. Then, we ⁽²⁾ on the grass to eat ⁽³⁾ food that our teachers brought. When the picnic finished, everyone ⁽⁴⁾ happily and thanked our teachers.

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النصّ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Last weekend, Farah and her family had a big family gathering at Farah's uncle's house. Everyone was happy and full of energy. They talked, laughed, and played games in the garden. Her uncle performed music on his oud, and everyone clapped and sang. Later, they sat together to eat special food like rice and chicken. Before going home, they exchanged gifts and socialized with friends and family. It was a lovely and fun day for everyone.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The text is about Farah's family gathering at her house.
a. aunt's b. uncle's c. grandparents' d. sister's
- 2 The underlined verb "performed" means ".....".
a. walked b. sang c. played d. threw

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 3 What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?

.....

- 4 What did they do before they went home?

.....

- 5 How did Farah describe the day of the family gathering?

.....

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- i played a game of chess with kareem.

Lesson 2 End-of-Year Party

Look, read, and notice:

انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:



wear special clothes

يرتدي ملابس مميزة



clap

تصفق



take photos

يلتقط صورًا



fireworks

ألعاب نارية

Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

playground	ملعب	celebration	احتفال	balloons	بالونات
fences	أسوار	lights	أنوار/أضواء	party	حفلة
students	تلاميذ	carefully	بعناية/بحرص	band	فرقة موسيقية
songs	أغاني	colors	ألوان	loudly	بصوت عالٍ

Adjectives الصفات

colorful	ملوّن	shiny	برّاق/لامع	large	كبير
enormous	ضخم	bright	زاهٍ	the best	الأفضل
special	خاص/مميز	clean	نظيف	unforgettable	لا يُنسى

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
look يبدو	looked	hang يعلق	hung
smile يبتسم	smiled	wear يرتدي	wore
laugh يضحك	laughed	sing يغني	sang
place يضع	placed	come يأتي	came
start يبدأ	started		



Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

all around the place	في جميع أنحاء المكان	in the center of	في مركز/في وسط
ready for	مستعد/جاهز لـ	lit up	أضاء
played a loud song	شغل/عزف أغنية عالية	at night	في الليل
made short videos	صنع مقاطع فيديو قصيرة	looked beautiful	بدا جميلاً



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Unforgettable Celebration احتفال لا يُنسى

The school playground looked beautiful during the celebration. There were colorful balloons hanging from the fences and shiny lights all around the place. A band played a loud song. The students wore their special clothes and smiled happily. Everyone clapped, laughed, and enjoyed the music together. In the center of the playground, a large cake was placed carefully on an enormous table. Our teacher was very happy because the playground looked clean, bright, and ready for the party. We played games, sang songs, and socialized with our friends. Many students took photos to remember the special day, and some even made short videos. The best part came at night when the fireworks started. They lit up the sky with beautiful colors, and everyone cheered loudly. It was an unforgettable celebration that we will always remember.



بدا ملعب المدرسة جميلاً خلال الاحتفال. كانت هناك بالونات ملونة معلقة على الأسوار وأضواء لامعة في جميع أنحاء المكان. الفرقة الموسيقية عزفت موسيقى عالية. ارتدى التلاميذ ملابسهم المميزة وابتسموا بسعادة. صق الجميع، ضحكوا، واستمتعوا بالموسيقى معاً. في وسط الملعب، تم وضع كعكة كبيرة بعناية على طاولة ضخمة. كان معلمنا سعيداً جداً لأن الملعب بدا نظيفاً، زاهياً، جاهزاً للحفلة. لعبنا الألعاب وغنينا الأغاني وتواصلنا اجتماعياً مع أصدقائنا. التقط العديد من التلاميذ صوراً لتذكر اليوم المميز، حتى إن البعض صنع مقاطع فيديو قصيرة. جاء أفضل جزء في الليل عندما بدأت الألعاب النارية. أضاءت السماء بألوان جميلة، وهتف الجميع بصوت عالٍ. كان احتفالاً لا يُنسى سنظل نتذكره دائماً.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 We watched beautiful in the sky last night.
a. clothes b. songs c. playgrounds d. fireworks
- 2 The farmer built new around his farm.
a. lights b. fences c. balloons d. chairs
- 3 People when they enjoy a show or a song.
a. sleep b. socialize c. listen d. clap
- 4 It was a/an day because everyone was happy.
a. clean b. unforgettable c. loud d. noisy

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

placed – lit up – clothes – clapped – photos

Last night, we had a birthday party for my sister at home. Everyone wore nice ⁽¹⁾ and brought gifts. A big cake was ⁽²⁾ on the table with candles. We took many ⁽³⁾ to remember the day. When we turned off the lights, the candles ⁽⁴⁾ the room beautifully.

3 Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 1 Where was the celebration?
.....
- 2 Why was the teacher happy?
.....
- 3 What happened at night?
.....



Read, look, and notice:

اقرأ، انظر ولاحظ:

Language in use

Adjectives الصفات

- Adjectives are words that describe **nouns**. They tell us what something looks, feels, sounds, or smells like.

الصفات هي كلمات تصف الأسماء. فهي تصف لنا شكل الشيء، ملمسه، صوته، أو رائحته.

Ex: – The **colorful** balloons flew in the air.



(“colorful” describes (تصف) “balloons”)



Adjectives describe ... الصفات تصف ...

people
الأشخاص

tall, short, kind, friendly, happy, sad, excited

طويل، قصير، طيب، ودود، سعيد، حزين، متحمّس



Ex: – The **kind** teacher helped all the students with their work.

objects
الأشياء

big, small, colorful, shiny, soft, round, brown

كبير، صغير، ملوّن، لامع، ناعم، مستدير، بُني



Ex: – I have a **colorful** kite that flies high in the sky.

places
الأماكن

quiet, busy/crowded, peaceful, beautiful

هادئ، مزدحم، هادئ/مسالم، جميل



Ex: – I live in a **peaceful** village with many palm trees.

feelings/events
المشاعر/الأحداث

exciting/amazing/wonderful, fun, boring

مذهل/رائع، ممتع، ممل



Ex: – The **wonderful** school concert made everyone smile.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The new student is very He likes everyone.
a. small b. sad c. friendly d. boring
- 2 The ball is It's easy to roll.
a. round b. tired c. bad d. heavy
- 3 The clown's hat was very with red and blue spots.
a. happy b. sad c. boring d. colorful
- 4 The area near the river is very and clean.
a. boring b. peaceful c. sad d. tall
- 5 The boy was to get a new bike.
a. exciting b. kind c. amazing d. excited
- 6 The lion is a animal that lives in the jungle.
a. tasty b. big c. loud d. shiny
- 7 The shop was too; there were many people.
a. crowded b. quiet c. small d. good
- 8 The day at the amusement park was for everyone.
a. shiny b. soft c. big d. fun

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 My brother is crying. He feels (sadness).
- 2 We stayed in a (peace) village with no noise or cars.
- 3 My sister is very (short). She can reach the top shelf easily.
- 4 The new movie was (exciting). I fell asleep during it.
- 5 My mom is very (tall). She helps everyone.
- 6 The park was so (big) that we couldn't find any place to sit.
- 7 The cat's ears are so (shiny). They feel nice to touch.
- 8 The school trip yesterday was (funny). We all enjoyed ourselves.

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النصّ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

On Friday evening, our town had a celebration near the river. People wore their special clothes and walked together to the park. There were colorful fences around the area. Families clapped when the band started to perform music. Children took photos with their friends and enjoyed delicious food. When it got dark, beautiful fireworks lit up the sky. Everyone smiled and socialized with friends happily. It was a night we will never forget.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The underlined verb "socialized" means ".....".
a. took b. talked c. saw d. started
- 2 The underlined word "their" refers to the ".....".
a. children b. photos c. fences d. people

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 3 Where was the celebration?
.....
- 4 When did the fireworks light up the sky?
.....
- 5 Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 Noura felt (exciting) to see her old friends in the club.
- 2 The street was (quiet) this morning. There were lots of cars and people.

3 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من أربع (4) جمل مستخدماً الكلمات أدناه:

"Your school celebration"

(balloons – wore – clapped)

.....

.....

Lesson 3

(A) Birthday Celebration

Look, read, and notice:

انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:



hang shiny ribbons

يعلّقون شرائط زينة لامعة



candles

شموع



decorate

يزيّن



cheerful

مبتهج



wrapped the giveaways

غلف الهدايا



guests

ضيوف

Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

help	مساعدة	birthday	عيد ميلاد	happiness	سعادة
party hat	قبعة الحفلة	joy	بهجة/فرح	laughter	ضحك

Adjectives الصفات

wonderful	مذهل/رائع	excited	متحمّس	tasty	لذيذ
-----------	-----------	---------	--------	-------	------

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
celebrate يحتفل	celebrated	put يضع	put
clean ينظّف	cleaned	buy يشتري	bought
join ينضم	joined		
share يشارك	shared		
arrive يصل	arrived		
receive يستقبل	received		



Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

at home	في المنزل	in the morning	في الصباح
get prepared for	يستعد لـ	woke up	استيقظ
on the top	في الأعلى/فوق	in the afternoon	بعد الظهر
at the end	في النهاية	blew out the candles	أطفأ الشموع
made a wish	تمنى أمنية	full of	مليء بـ
baked a delicious cake	خبز كعكة لذيذة		

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Zein's Birthday Party حفلة عيد ميلاد زين

Last Friday, Zein celebrated his birthday at home. In the morning, he woke up excited and started getting prepared for the big day. With his sister's help, he cleaned the living room and decorated it with colorful balloons. His father helped him hang the balloons. They hung shiny ribbons and bright lights to make the house cheerful. Zein's mother baked a delicious cake, and he put candles on the top. In the afternoon, Zein wrapped the giveaways he had bought for his friends because he wanted to share his happiness. When the guests arrived, everyone wore a party hat and joined the fun. They sang songs, played games, and enjoyed tasty food. At the end, Zein blew out the candles, made a wish, and received gifts from his friends. It was a wonderful birthday celebration full of joy and laughter.



يوم الجمعة الماضي، احتفل زين بعيد ميلاده في المنزل. في الصباح، استيقظ متحمساً وبدأ في الاستعداد لليوم الكبير. بمساعدة أخته، نظف غرفة المعيشة وزينها بالونات ملونة. ساعده والده في تعليق البالونات. علّقوا شرائط زينة لامعة وأضواء زاهية لجعل المنزل مبهّجاً. خبزت والدته زين كعكة لذيذة، ووضع هو شموعاً فوقها. بعد الظهر، علّف زين الهدايا التي اشتراها لأصدقائه لأنه أراد أن يشاركهم سعادته. عندما وصل الضيوف، ارتدى الجميع قبعة الحفلة وانضموا إلى المرح. غنّوا الأغاني، لعبوا الألعاب، واستمتعوا بالطعام اللذيذ. في النهاية، أطفأ زين الشموع. تمنى أمنية، وتلقّى هدايا من أصدقائه. كان احتفالاً رائعاً بعيد الميلاد مليئاً بالبهجة والضحك.

Tryout



Read and put (✓) or (X):

اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أو (X):

- 1 Zein celebrated his birthday at school. ()
- 2 Zein's sister helped him clean the living room. ()
- 3 Zein sang a song when he blew out the candles. ()

Answers:

1. (X)

2. (✓)

3. (X)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The children were very when they received gifts.
a. sad b. cheerful c. tired d. angry
- 2 Before eating the cake, the girl a wish.
a. made b. baked c. cleaned d. played
- 3 Mom the house before the guests arrived.
a. cooked b. bought c. joined d. decorated
- 4 Hatem wrapped the in red paper.
a. giveaways b. houses c. guests d. living rooms

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

hung – guests – birthday – ribbons – candles

Last weekend, Salma had her birthday at home. Her parents decorated the living room with colorful ⁽¹⁾ and balloons. They put a big cake on the table and added ⁽²⁾ on it. When the ⁽³⁾ arrived, everyone clapped and sang a ⁽⁴⁾ song. It was a fun and happy day.

3 Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 1 When did Zein celebrate his birthday?
-

- 2 What did Zein's mother and father do?
-

- 3 What happened when the guests arrived?
-

B Pronunciation

Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

The plural noun with the suffix -s

اسم الجمع مع اللاحقة -s

- We use plural forms of nouns when we are talking about more than one:
- نستخدم صيغ الجمع للأسماء عندما نتحدث عن أكثر من:

person شخص

animal حيوان

thing or object شيء

Ex: – one friend → friends
(more than one)

Ex: – one cat → cats
(more than one)

Ex: – one book → books
(more than one)

- When a noun is singular, we form the plural one by adding:
- عندما يكون الاسم مفردًا، نكوّن صيغة الجمع بإضافة:

-s

To most nouns.
لمعظم الأسماء.

-es

To nouns ending in (s, sh, ch, x, o).
للأسماء المنتهية بـ (s, sh, ch, x, o).

-ies

To nouns ending in (a consonant + -y).
للأسماء المنتهية بـ (حرف ساكن + -y).

Ex: – cat → cats

Ex: – dish → dishes

Ex: – party → parties

- Some singular nouns have irregular plural forms:

• بعض الأسماء المفردة لها صيغ جمع غير منتظمة:

Ex: – child → children

Tip!

- When the **noun** is singular, we usually add “-s” to the **verb**.

• عندما يكون الاسم مفردًا، نضيف عادةً حرف “-s” إلى الفعل.

Ex: – The girl **hides** under the table.



- When the **noun (subject)** is plural, we do not add “-s” to the verb.

• عندما يكون الاسم (الفاعل) جمعًا، لا نضيف “-s” إلى الفعل.

Ex: – The boys **kick** the ball.





Play Audio

Listen and repeat:

استمع ورّد:

Suffix: Final -s sounds in plural

اللاحقة: الأصوات النهائية -s بصيغة الجمع

- The final “-s” can be pronounced differently depending on the word:
- يمكن نطق الحرف “-s” النهائي بشكل مختلف اعتمادًا على الكلمة:

- “-s” is pronounced /s/ if the plural noun ends in letter sounds (p, f, k, t, th, ph).

• يُنطق حرف “-s” /s/ إذا انتهى اسم الجمع بأصوات الحروف (p, f, k, t, th, ph).

- “-s” is pronounced /Iz/ if the plural noun ends in letter sounds (s, ss, sh, ch, x, z).

• يُنطق حرف “-s” /Iz/ إذا انتهى اسم الجمع بأصوات الحروف (s, ss, sh, ch, x, z).

- “-s” is pronounced /z/ if the plural noun ends in letter sounds (b, g, d, n, m, r, l, y, v, a, e, i, o, u).

• يُنطق حرف “-s” /z/ إذا انتهى اسم الجمع بأصوات الحروف (b, g, d, n, m, r, l, y, v, a, e, i, o, u).

/s/	/z/	/Iz/
guests ضيوف	ribbons شرائط	houses منازل
books كُتب	candles شموع	boxes صناديق
cats قطط	friends أصدقاء	buses أتوبيسات/حافلات
	giveaways هدايا	foxes ثعالب
		dishes أطباق

Tryout

- Listen and circle the word with the different (-s) ending sound out:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة التي بها صوت نهاية (-s) مختلف:



Play Audio

- buses – houses – books – foxes
- dishes – guests – cats – books

- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- The (child) enjoy going to birthday celebrations.
- My friend (play) basketball in the club every week.

Answers: (1) 1. books 2. dishes (2) 1. children 2. plays

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 We hung colorful on the walls before the party started.
a. candles b. ribbons c. cakes d. sweets
- 2 Let's out the candles and eat the cake!
a. help b. hang c. decorate d. blow
- 3 The brought nice gifts for Mona.
a. chairs b. giveaways c. candles d. guests

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Hana didn't know her family was planning something special for her birthday. When she came home from school, she found colorful balloons and a big chocolate cake on the table. Her parents and brother shouted, "Happy Birthday!" Hana smiled and felt so happy and excited. They played her favorite songs and took many funny photos together to make Hana happy. Her mother cut the cake, and everyone enjoyed a tasty piece. It was the best surprise Hana ever had.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Hana found a big on the table when she got home.
a. ribbon b. balloon c. book d. chocolate cake
- 2 The underlined adjective "tasty" means
a. delicious b. bad c. boring d. loud

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 3 What is the general idea of the text?
.....
- 4 What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?
.....
- 5 What did Hana's family do to make her happy?
.....

Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

Labor Day	عيد العمال	workers	عمّال	hard work	عمل جاد
flags	أعلام	neighborhood	حيّ	jobs	وظائف/أعمال
moments	لحظات	efforts	جهود	heroes	أبطال
soldiers	جنود	country	دولة/بلد	every day	كل يوم
Sinai Liberation Day	يوم تحرير سيناء	everyone	الجميع		

Adjectives الصفات

happy	سعيد	brave	شجاع
-------	------	-------	------

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
honor يكرّم	honored	see يرى	saw
thank يشكر	thanked	feel يشعر	felt
appreciate يقدر	appreciated	do يفعل	did
free يحرّر	freed	give يعطي	gave
wave يلوّح	waved		

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

held a small celebration أقيم احتفالاً صغيراً	had a wonderful time أمضى وقتاً رائعاً
a special day to remember يوم مميز للتذكّر	joined a small event انضم إلى حدث صغير
felt proud شعر بالفخر	on May 1 st في الأول من مايو

Note

- We use **capital letters** at the beginning of the names of special days and holidays.
- نستخدم الحروف الكبيرة في بداية أسماء الأيام المميزة والإجازات.

Ex: – Labor Day – Liberation Day



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Celebrating Labor Day

الاحتفال بعيد العُمال

Title عنوان

Your name & the date

اسمك والتاريخ

By Fady
May 1, 2025

Introduction

مقدمة

On May 1st, we celebrate Labor Day. It is a special day to honor workers and all the hard work they do. My family and I joined a small event in our neighborhood.

Body with details

نص المدونة مع التفاصيل

We saw workers being thanked for their jobs. I made a colorful card to give to my father and teacher. Everyone enjoyed the celebrations and shared happy moments together.

Conclusion

خاتمة

I had a wonderful time celebrating Labor Day. Everyone should appreciate workers and their efforts every day!

Picture

صورة



بواسطة فادي

1 مايو 2025

في الأول من مايو، نحتفل بعيد العُمال. إنه يوم مميز لتكريم العُمال وكل ما يقومون به من عمل جاد. انضمت أنا وعائلتي إلى حدث صغير في حيّنا. رأينا العُمال يتم شكرهم على أعمالهم. صنعنا بطاقة ملونة لأعطينا لوالدي ومعلمي. استمتع الجميع بالاحتفالات وتشاركوا لحظات سعيدة معًا. قضيت وقتًا رائعًا في الاحتفال بعيد العُمال. يجب على الجميع أن يقدروا العُمال وجهودهم كل يوم!

Celebrating Sinai Liberation Day

الاحتفال بيوم تحرير سيناء

By Fady
April 25, 2025

On April 25th, we celebrate Sinai Liberation Day. It is a special day to remember when Sinai was freed.



My school held a small celebration in the playground. We sang songs and waved flags. I learned about the brave soldiers who helped free Sinai. Everyone felt proud and happy to celebrate our country.

I had a wonderful time celebrating Sinai Liberation Day. Everyone should remember and honor the heroes of our country!



بواسطة فادي

25 أبريل 2025

في الخامس والعشرين من أبريل، نحتفل بيوم تحرير سيناء. إنه يوم مميز لنتذكر عندما تم تحرير سيناء. أقامت مدرستي احتفالاً صغيراً في الملعب. غنينا الأغاني ولوحنا بالأعلام. تعلّمت عن الجنود الشجعان الذين ساعدوا في تحرير سيناء. شعر الجميع بالفخر والسعادة للاحتفال ببلدنا. قضيت وقتاً رائعاً في الاحتفال بيوم تحرير سيناء. يجب على الجميع تذكّر أبطال بلدنا وتكريمهم!

Read and notice the following steps:

اقرأ ولاحظ الخطوات الآتية:

Steps of writing a blog post about a celebration

خطوات كتابة منشور مدونة عن احتفال ما



- 1 Start with a title. ابدأ بعنوان.
Ex: Celebrating Labor Day
- 2 Write your name and the date. اكتب اسمك والتاريخ.
Ex: By Fady
May 1, 2025
- 3 Write an introduction. It should tell readers what the blog post is about. اكتب مقدمة. يجب أن تخبر القراء بما يدور حوله منشور المدونة.
- 4 Write the body with details. You should write the body in several clear and short sentences. اكتب نصّ المدونة مع التفاصيل. يجب أن تكتب النصّ في عدة جمل واضحة وقصيرة.
- 5 Write a conclusion to share your final feeling or message about the celebration. اكتب خاتمة لمشاركة شعورك النهائي أو رسالتك حول الاحتفال.
- 6 Add pictures to make your blog post more interesting. أضف صوراً لجعل منشور مدونتك أكثر تشويقاً.
- 7 Check your spelling before sharing the blog post. تحقق من تهجيتك قبل مشاركة منشور المدونة.



Read and notice the following steps:

اقرأ ولاحظ الخطوات الآتية:

Steps of designing a "Thank You" card to the teacher



خطوات تصميم «بطاقة شكر» للمعلم

- 1 Write a message (4 sentences) to your teacher saying why you appreciate them.

اكتب رسالة (4 جمل) لمعلمك توضح فيها سبب تقديرك له.

- 2 Write "Thank you, Teacher" and decorate the front cover.

اكتب «شكرًا لك، يا معلم» وزين الغلاف الأمامي.

Ex:

You always help me
learn new things.
You are kind and
patient.

أنت دائمًا تساعدني على تعلم

أشياء جديدة.

أنت لطيف وصبور.

I enjoy your
classes every day.
You make learning
fun and interesting.

أنا أستمع بحرصك كل يوم.

أنت تجعل التعلم ممتعًا وشيقًا.



Thank you,
Teacher



Tryout



Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل الجمل مستخدمًا الكلمات في الصندوق:

pictures – title – introduction

- 1 You start your blog post with a
- 2 The tells readers what the blog post is about.
- 3 Adding can make a blog post more interesting.

3. pictures

2. introduction

1. title

Answers:

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The man was very when he helped the old lady.
a. lazy b. weak c. brave d. sad
- 2 The team made great to win the race.
a. efforts b. days c. holidays d. jobs
- 3 Doctors and nurses are real
a. heroes b. players c. teachers d. friends
- 4 I my mom for the lovely meal.
a. felt b. saw c. thanked d. gave

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

free – neighborhood – honor – card – songs

On October 6th, Egyptians celebrate a very special day. We ⁽¹⁾ the brave soldiers who worked hard to protect our country. Children in my ⁽²⁾ draw flags and sing ⁽³⁾ together. At school, I made a small ⁽⁴⁾ to thank the soldiers for their great work.

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- 1 On may 1st, we celebrate Labor Day

- 2 when do we celebrate Sinai Liberation Day

4 Write a blog post of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب منشور مدونة من أربع (4) جمل مستخدماً الكلمات أدناه:

"An Egyptian celebration"

(celebrate – honor – efforts)

Vocabulary

clap	تصَفَّق	fences	أسوار	candles	شموع
fireworks	ألعاب نارية	cheerful	مبتَهج	guests	ضيوف
decorate	يُزَيِّن	workers	عُمَال	brave	شجاع
enormous	ضخم	heroes	أبطال	soldiers	جنود
Labor Day	عيد العُمَال	take photos	يلتقط صورًا	play a game	يلعبون لعبة
exchange gifts	يتبادلون الهدايا	perform music	يعزفون/يؤدون الموسيقى	hide-and-seek	الغميضة/الاستغماية
eat special food	يأكلون طعامًا خاصًا/مميزًا	socialize with friends	يتواصلون اجتماعيًا مع الأصدقاء	family gathering	تجمُّع عائلي
wear special clothes	يرتدي ملابس مميزة	hang shiny ribbons	يعلِّقون شرائط زينة لامعة	wrapped the giveaways	غلف الهدايا

Language

Adjectives

- **Adjectives** are words that describe **nouns**. They tell us what something looks, feels, sounds, or smells like. Adjectives describe ...

• الصفات هي كلمات تصف الأسماء. فهي تخبرنا بشكل الشيء، ملمسه، صوته، أو رائحته. الصفات تصف ...

people

tall – short –
kind – friendly
– happy – sad
– excited

objects

big – small
– colorful –
shiny – soft –
round – brown

places

quiet – busy/
crowded –
peaceful –
beautiful

feelings/events

exciting/amazing/
wonderful – fun
– boring

- Ex:** – The **kind** teacher helped all the students with their work.
– I have a **colorful** kite that flies high in the sky.
– I live in a **peaceful** village with many palm trees.
– The **wonderful** school concert made everyone smile.



Reading & Conversation in Points

Lesson 1 Family Gathering

- Salma and Amr are talking about the family gathering of the last weekend.
سلمى وعمرو يتحدثان عن التجمُّع العائلي الذي حدث في نهاية الأسبوع الماضي.
- They enjoyed the music, and Amr's uncle played his oud.
استمتعوا بالموسيقى، وعزف عمُّ عمرو على العود الخاص به.
- They played games like chess and hide-and-seek.
لعبوا ألعاباً مثل الشطرنج والغميضة.
- They ate special food such as grilled chicken and cake.
أكلوا طعاماً مميزاً مثل الدجاج المشوي والكعك.
- Amr brought fruit salad. They spent time exchanging gifts and talking with everyone.
أحضّر عمرو سلطة فاكهة. قضوا وقتاً في تبادل الهدايا والتحدث مع الجميع.

Lesson 2 End-of-Year Party

- The students celebrated a big school party in the playground.
احتفل التلاميذ بحفلة مدرسية كبيرة في الملعب.
- They decorated the place with balloons and lights.
زَيَّنوا المكان بالبالونات والأضواء.
- They wore special clothes, played games, and took photos with friends.
ارتدوا ملابس مميزة، لعبوا ألعاباً، والتقطوا صوراً مع الأصدقاء.
- Fireworks lit up the sky and made everyone happy at the end of the day.
أضاءت الألعاب النارية السماء وجعلت الجميع سعداء في نهاية اليوم.

Lesson 3 (A) Birthday Celebration

- Zein celebrated his birthday at home with his family and friends.
احتفل زين بعيد ميلاده في المنزل مع عائلته وأصدقائه.
- He and his sister cleaned and decorated the living room with colorful balloons.
هو وأخته نظفا وزَيَّنَا غرفة المعيشة بالبالونات الملونة.
- His mother baked a delicious cake, and he put candles on the top.
خبزت والدته كعكة لذيذة، ووضع هو شموعاً فوقها.
- The guests sang, and Zein blew out the candles and made a wish.
غنى الضيوف، وأطفأ زين الشموع وتمنى أمنية.

Lessons 4&5 Labor Day/Think and Create

- Fady and his family celebrated Labor Day on May 1st.
احتفل فادي وعائلته بعيد العُمّال في الأول من مايو.
- They joined a small event in their neighborhood to thank the workers.
انضموا إلى حدث صغير في حيّهم لتقديم الشكر للعُمّال.
- Everyone enjoyed the celebration and learned to appreciate workers' efforts.
استمتع الجميع بالاحتفال وتعلّموا تقدير جهود العُمّال.



Dictation

Lesson (1)

يعزفون/يؤدون الموسيقى	يتبادلون الهدايا
يأكلون طعامًا خاصًا/مميزًا	يلعبون لعبة
تجمّع عائلي	يتواصلون اجتماعيًا مع الأصدقاء
شطرنج	الغميضة/الاستغماية
مذهل	دجاج مشوي

Lesson (2)

تصفّق	يرتدي ملابس مميزة
بالونات	احتفال
أنوار/أضواء	أسوار
ضخم	ملعب
فرقة موسيقية	لا يُنسى
يلتقط صورًا	ألعاب نارية

Lesson (3)

شموع	يعلّقون شرائط زينة لامعة
مبتهج	يزنّ
ضيوف	غلف الهدايا
ضحك	لذيذ
قبة الحفلة	سعادة

Lessons (4&5)

عيد العُمال	عُمال
عمل جاد	حيّ
أبطال	جهود
جنود	دولة/بلد



Conjugation of Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
enjoy		place	.....
win		sing	.....
talk		remember	.....
listen		start	.....
do		celebrate	.....
clap		laugh	.....
bring		put	.....
cheer		buy	.....
look		clean	.....
hang		join	.....
wear		share	.....
smile		arrive	.....
come		receive	.....
honor		feel	.....
thank		see	.....
appreciate		give	.....
free		wave	.....



Writing Station

حلها صح

هذا الجزء خاص بالتدريب على حل سؤال (Writing) في الورقة الامتحانية

Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

"My end-of-year party"

(1) Think of words related to the topic and sort them in the boxes below.

فكر في كلمات ذات صلة بالموضوع وصرّفها في الصناديق أدناه.

Nouns

1. school 2. friends 3. balloons

Verbs

2. sang 3. socialized

Others

1. last 2. a lot of 3. colorful

(2) Form your sentences.

كوّن جملتك.

Subject (Pronoun/Noun) + verb + the rest of the sentence (تكملة الجملة)

1. We had our end-of-year party at school last week.
2. We hung a lot of colorful balloons.
3. We sang lovely songs.
4. We socialized with our friends.

(3) Write your paragraph.

اكتب فقرتك.

We had our end-of-year party at school last week. We hung a lot of colorful balloons. We sang lovely songs. We socialized with our friends.

Write it yourself!

اكتب بنفسك!

"Your last birthday party"

Nouns

1. 2. 3.

Verbs

2. 3.

Others

1. 2. 3.

Your sentences

2.
4.

Your paragraph

فقرتك



Important Paragraphs

A family gathering

weekend – performed – food

We had a family gathering last **weekend**. My uncle **performed** music. I played a game of chess with my cousins. We ate special **food** like cake.



An end-of-year party

school – balloons – clothes

The **school** had the end-of-year party yesterday. There were colorful **balloons** hanging from the fences. We wore our special **clothes**. Fireworks lit up the sky.



Your birthday celebration

celebrate – ribbons – candles

I will **celebrate** my birthday next week with my family. I will hang shiny **ribbons**. I will put **candles** on my cake. I will make a wish.



Celebrating Labor Day

workers – thank – efforts

On May 1st, we celebrate Labor Day. It is a day to honor **workers**. We **thank** them for their hard work. Everyone should appreciate workers' **efforts** every day.





1 Circle the correct answer:

1 The boy helped his friend carry the heavy bag.

- 2 Sara bought a dress for the school party.

- 3 We went to a park full of green trees and flowers.

- 4 Omar felt when he lost his pencil case.

- 5 The sports day made all the students cheer and clap.

- 2** Fill in the blanks using the words in the box:

guests – take photos – perform – decorated – fireworks

- 1 During the celebration, we watched people on the stage.

- 2 The sky was full of bright on Labor Day.

- 3 I use a camera to to remember special moments.

- 4 Many came to the party to celebrate with us.

- 5 The hall was beautifully for the birthday party.

3 Change the sentences from singular to plural:

1 The boy reads a book.

 [A K I G D T V L H R Y C S N Q T F G E P L K A H X D R K S M R R S L D T Y T D D T L V Y S H C A H A K T H A G C E A A D D A A I A G C I I A L T H E S I D T T D C H T A D A A C A T G T T

- 2 The dog sleeps in the yard.

- 3 The flower grows in the garden.

[illegible]

- 4 The teacher writes on the board.

[illegible]

- 5 The child eats an apple.

Test on unit (4)

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Our school had a big party at the end of the year. ()
2. The playground was full of balloons and ribbons. ()
3. There was a big cake on a chair. ()
4. Everyone took photos and shared food. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Putting on the birthday cake shows your age.
a. guests b. candles c. ribbons d. fireworks
2. We all should people who do great things in our community.
a. enjoy b. hang c. wear d. appreciate
3. Ahmed gave me a phone. I will buy a bigger one.
a. colorful b. small c. soft d. tall
4. The park is on Saturday. Not many people are there.
a. loud b. quiet c. amazed d. crowded
5. The club is a perfect place to with new friends.
a. socialize b. bring c. wear d. clean
6. The school event this year was The guests enjoyed it.
a. boring b. amaze c. amazed d. amazing

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

grilled – hide-and-seek – celebration – gift – music

Yesterday, my friends came to my house after school. We played ⁽¹⁾ in the garden and laughed together. Then my cousin performed nice ⁽²⁾ on his guitar, and everyone clapped. After that, we ate ⁽³⁾ chicken and cake. Before they left, my best friend gave me a nice ⁽⁴⁾

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Labor Day is a special day to thank workers in many countries. In Egypt, people celebrate it on May 1st and enjoy a day off work. In the United States and Canada, it is on the first Monday of September. In China, people have a 3-to-5-day holiday around May 1st, and they travel or visit their families there. In Brazil, families relax together and enjoy fun activities. The day shows love and respect for all workers.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text mainly talks about
 - a. birthday celebration
 - b. school party
 - c. Labor Day
 - d. family gathering
2. The underlined word "there" refers to
 - a. China
 - b. Canada
 - c. Egypt
 - d. the United States

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is Labor Day?

.....

4. When is Labor Day in the U.S.A. and Canada?

.....

5. What does the underlined verb "relax" mean?

.....

**(C) Writing****5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. There are a lot of people inside the cinema. It is really
(quiet) today.
2. The flowers in your garden look so (beauty).
3. I decorated the front cover of my card with (colors)
drawings.
4. The little girl was too (tall). She couldn't put the book on
the shelf.

6 Punctuate the following:

1. What game did amr play with Kareem
.....
2. Last friday, Zein celebrated his birthday at home
.....

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

"Your friend's last birthday party"

(celebrated – balloons – cake)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

(A) Listening



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

1. Dina celebrated her last night.
a. school b. balloon c. gift d. birthday
2. Dina's made her a tasty cake.
a. friends b. parents c. teachers d. guests
3. Some guests gave Dina gifts.
a. unforgettable b. shiny c. colorful d. small

(B) Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

performed – chess – cheered – enjoyed

Salma : Hi Nagwa! I heard that you had a family gathering yesterday.

Nagwa : Hi Salma! Yes. I ⁽¹⁾ it a lot.

Salma : What did you do?

Nagwa : My brother ⁽²⁾ music on his oud. My sisters and cousins clapped and ⁽³⁾ I also played ⁽⁴⁾ with my sister.

Salma : It looks like you had a wonderful time!

(C) Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. The in the sky made an amazing view.
a. clothes b. ribbons c. playgrounds d. fireworks
2. My little sister has a/an toy monkey.
a. excited b. soft c. friendly d. crowded
3. He is a lonely boy. He doesn't with friends.
a. socialize b. wear c. decorate d. bring
4. The police officer helped the poor woman in the street.
a. kindly b. kind c. friend d. kindness

**4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:**

1. Playing chess is bored. Let's play something else. (.....)
2. Yara's dress is color. It has lots of colors. (.....)
3. My dad's village is crowded. It's not busy like cities. (.....)
4. I got the full mark in my English test. I'm so sad. (.....)

(D) Reading Comprehension**5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Last week, our school had a special celebration in the playground. Teachers and students worked together to make the place beautiful. There were balloons, flags, and happy songs. Some children played the piano, and others sang. I helped my friends prepare the games. We laughed, clapped, and took photos together. After that, we ate sandwiches and cake. Everyone felt proud and excited. It was a wonderful day full of fun and smiles.

(A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Last week, our school had a celebration in the classroom. ()
2. The celebration was a wonderful day full of fun and smiles. ()

(B) Choose the correct answer:

3. There were and balloons in the celebration.
 a. ribbons b. candles c. giveaways d. flags
4. The underlined word "wonderful" means
 a. amazing b. fast c. slow d. unkind
5. Everyone felt of this celebration.
 a. afraid b. shiny c. proud d. colorful

(E) Writing**6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences:****"Labor Day"**

(celebrate – special – hard work – thank)

.....

.....

.....

5 Unit

Exploring Wonders in Egypt

Learning Outcomes

نتائج التعلم

Speaking

- Describe trips, holidays, and experiences using simple sentences
- Ask and answer questions about places, activities, and local life
- Give advice using should/shouldn't in short dialogs
- Pronounce oi/oy words correctly in speech

- وصف رحلات، إجازات، وتجارب باستخدام جمل بسيطة
- طرح الأسئلة والإجابة عنها حول الأماكن، والأنشطة، والحياة المحلية
- إعطاء نصائح باستخدام should/shouldn't في محادثات قصيرة
- نطق كلمات بها oi/oy بشكل صحيح في الكلام

Listening

- Listen to short stories and dialogs about Egyptian places
- Identify key details such as locations, activities, and landmarks
- Understand advice using should/shouldn't in context
- Recognize oi/oy sounds in spoken words

- الاستماع إلى قصص ومحادثات قصيرة عن أماكن مصرية
- تحديد تفاصيل رئيسية مثل المواقع، والأنشطة، والمعالم
- فهم النصائح باستخدام should/shouldn't في سياق
- التعرف على أصوات oi/oy في كلمات منطوقة

Reading

- Read short texts about places and identify the main idea
- Recognize vocabulary related to trips, holidays, and sightseeing
- Identify should/shouldn't in written advice texts
- Understand the structure of postcards, including greeting, body, and closing

- قراءة نصوص قصيرة عن الأماكن وتحديد الفكرة الرئيسية
- التعرف على المفردات المتعلقة بالرحلات، الإجازات، ومشاهدة المعالم السياحية
- تحديد should/shouldn't في نصوص نصائح مكتوبة
- فهم تكوين البطاقات البريدية، بما في ذلك التحية، نَصْ البطاقة البريدية، والخاتمة

Writing

- Write short sentences or paragraphs about trips or holidays
- Compose advice sentences using should/shouldn't
- Complete spelling activities with oi/oy words
- Write a short postcard including greeting, body, and closing
- Create a mind map about exciting places in Egypt

- كتابة جمل قصيرة أو فقرات عن الرحلات أو الإجازات
- تكوين جمل نصيحة باستخدام should/shouldn't
- إكمال أنشطة التهجئة لكلمات بها oi/oy
- كتابة بطاقة بريدية قصيرة تتضمن التحية، نَصْ البطاقة البريدية، والخاتمة
- إنشاء خريطة ذهنية عن الأماكن الممتعة في مصر

Lesson

1

Land of History and Heritage



Play Audio

Listen, look, and repeat:

استمع، انظر وردّد:

New Vocabulary

مفردات جديدة



water springs

عيون/ينابيع مياه



journey

رحلة



bedouins

البدو



tents

خيام



traditional life

حياة تقليدية

Extra Vocabulary

مفردات إضافية

also	أيضًا	place	مكان	South Sinai	جنوب سيناء
palm trees	أشجار النخيل	Moses	سيدنا موسى	people	قوم
during	أثناء	visitors	زائرون	near	بالقرب من
history	تاريخ	wonder	أعجوبة	everyone	الجميع

Adjectives

الصفات

beautiful	جميل	fresh	نقي/عذب	historical	تاريخي
clean	نظيف	quiet	هادئ	interesting	شيق
local	محلي	natural	طبيعي	important	مهم



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
call يُسمَّى	called	has/have يمتلك/لديه	had
enjoy يستمتع	enjoyed	drink يشرب	drank
walk يمشي	walked	come يأتي	came
		meet يقابل	met
		see يرى	saw

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

long ago منذ زمن بعيد	through the desert غُبر الصحراء
take photos يلتقط صورًا	learn about يتعلَّم عن/يتعرَّف على

(Reading) main points النقاط الأساسية في فقرة القراءة

- Oyoum Mousa is in South Sinai, Egypt. تقع عيون موسى في جنوب سيناء، في مصر.
- It has fresh water springs and palm trees. بها ينابيع مياه عذبة وأشجار نخيل.
- Moses and his people drank from these springs long ago. شرب سيدنا موسى وقومه من هذه الينابيع منذ زمن بعيد.
- Visitors enjoy the clean water and the quiet desert around it. يستمتع الزوار بالمياه النظيفة والصحراء الهادئة المحيطة بها.
- People can take photos and learn about the history of the place. يمكن للناس أن تلتقط صورًا ويتعرفوا على تاريخ المكان.
- Some visitors can meet local bedouins and learn about their traditional life. بعض الزوار يمكنهم مقابلة البدو المحليين والتعرَّف على حياتهم التقليدية.
- It is an important natural and historical place. إنها مكان طبيعي وتاريخي مهم.



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Oyoun Mousa, also called Moses Springs, is a beautiful place in South Sinai, Egypt. It has fresh water springs and tall palm trees. Long ago, Moses and the people drank water from these springs during their journey through the desert.

Today, many visitors come to enjoy the clean water and the quiet desert around it. You can take photos, walk near the springs, and learn about the interesting history of the place. Some visitors also meet local bedouins, see their tents, and learn about their traditional life. Oyoun Mousa is not only a natural wonder but also an important historical site for everyone.

عيون موسى، تُسمَّى أيضًا بينابيع موسى، هي مكان جميل في جنوب سيناء، في مصر. بها ينابيع مياه عذبة وأشجار نخيل طويلة. منذ زمن بعيد، شرب سيدنا موسى وقومه الماء من هذه الينابيع أثناء رحلتهم عبر الصحراء. اليوم، يأتي العديد من الزوار للاستمتاع بالمياه النظيفة والصحراء الهادئة المحيطة بها. يمكنك التقاط الصور، المشي بالقرب من الينابيع، والتعرّف على التاريخ الشيق لهذا المكان. يلتقي بعض الزوار أيضًا بالبدو المحليين، ويرون خيامهم، ويتعرّفون على حياتهم التقليدية. عيون موسى ليست فقط أعجوبة طبيعية، بل هي أيضًا موقع تاريخي مهم للجميع.



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False: استمع واكتب (T) صحيح أو (F) خطأ:

- 1 Oyoun Mousa is in Luxor. ()
- 2 Moses and his people drank from the springs. ()
- 3 Visitors enjoy the quiet desert there. ()
- 4 Oyoun Mousa is a boring place. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Many animals travel the desert to find water.
a. through b. under c. behind d. next
- 2 live in small groups and move from place to place.
a. Dentists b. Bedouins c. Builders d. Chefs
- 3 The Giza Pyramids are a of the world.
a. secret b. problem c. mistake d. wonder
- 4 We all should encourage buying products.
a. foreign b. local c. broken d. borrowed
- 5 The flowers grow well in air and sunlight.
a. natural b. empty c. dangerous d. painted
- 6 They built strong for camping.
a. pillows b. glasses c. ladders d. tents
- 7 The bird continued its long across the sky.
a. classroom b. journey c. arrival d. concert
- 8 The ancient book has value.
a. loud b. fresh c. historical d. colorful

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

take – springs – tents – important – traditional

I love visiting the village near the mountains. It has fresh water ⁽¹⁾ where people drink clean water. The villagers have a ⁽²⁾ life that they follow every day. It is an ⁽³⁾ place to learn about life in the past. Many visitors ⁽⁴⁾ photos to remember their journey.

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النصّ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Some places in Egypt are special because of their nature and history. Many visitors love going to areas in the desert where there are fresh water springs and tall palm trees. People enjoy relaxing in the quiet desert and learning about the bedouins who live there. The bedouins have a traditional life, and they are known for being kind and welcoming. These places are important because they are natural and historical at the same time.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Visitors enjoy learning about the who live in the desert.
a. doctors b. bedouins c. farmers d. drivers
- 2 The underlined phrase "a traditional life" means "a life that follows ways."
a. new b. old c. modern d. strange

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 3 What is the main idea of the text?
.....
- 4 How are the bedouins described in the text?
.....
- 5 What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?
.....

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- moses and the people drank water from these springs
.....

Lesson 2 Adventures in South Sinai

Look, read, and notice:

انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:



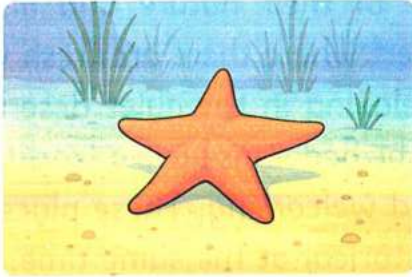
snorkeling

الغطس



scuba diving

الغوص



starfish

نجم البحر



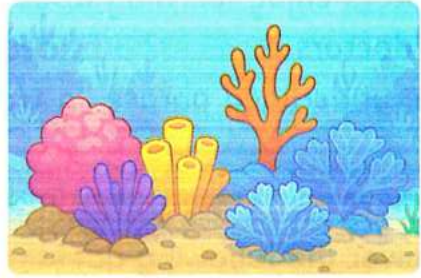
horseback riding

ركوب الخيل



hiking

التجول



corals

شعاب مرجانية

Extra Vocabulary

مفردات إضافية

mid-year	منتصف العام	vacation	إجازة/عطلة	holiday	إجازة
really	حقاً	mountains	جبال	definitely	بالطبع
because	لأن	sea animals	كائنات بحرية		

**Adjectives** الصفات

wonderful	رائع	amazing	مذهل	living	حي/على قيد الحياة
-----------	------	---------	------	--------	-------------------

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs		Irregular verbs	
Present	Past	Present	Past
مضارع	ماضي	مضارع	ماضي
try	tried	spend	spent
يحاول		يقضي	
touch	touched	do	did
يلمس		يفعل	
visit	visited	go	went
يزور		يذهب	

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

with my family	مع عائلتي	That sounds fun!	هذا يبدو ممتعًا!
You're right!	أنت محقٌّ!	by the beach	بجوار الشاطئ
That sounds amazing!	هذا يبدو مذهلاً!	What else ...?	ماذا أيضًا ...؟

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

A Wonderful Vacation in Dahab

إجازة رائعة في دهب

Karima : Hi Salma! How was your mid-year vacation?

مرحبًا يا سلمى! كيف كانت إجازة منتصف العام؟

Salma : It was wonderful! I spent my holiday in Dahab with my family.

كانت رائعة! قضيت إجازتي في دهب مع عائلتي.



Karima : Wow! What did you do there?

واو! ماذا فعلت هناك؟



Salma : We went scuba diving and saw many starfish. You should really try it one day!

ذهبنا للغوص ورأينا العديد من نجوم البحر. يجب عليك حقًا أن تجربي ذلك يومًا ما!

Karima : That sounds fun! Did you go snorkeling too?

يبدو ذلك ممتعًا! هل ذهبت للغطس أيضًا؟

Salma : Yes, and I saw corals. You shouldn't touch them. Because they are living sea animals.

نعم، ورأيت الشعاب المرجانية. لا يجب أن تلمسها لأنها كائنات بحرية حيّة.

Karima : You're right! What else did you do? أنت محقّة! ماذا فعلت أيضًا؟

Salma : We went hiking in the mountains and horseback riding by the beach. ذهبنا للتجول في الجبال وركوب الخيل بجوار الشاطئ.

Karima : That sounds amazing! I should visit Dahab next vacation!

هذا يبدو مذهلاً! يجب أن أزور دهب في عطلةتي القادمة!

Salma : You definitely should! بالطبع يجب عليك ذلك!

Tryout

Read and put (✓) or (X):

اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أو (X):

- | | | |
|---|--|-----|
| 1 | Salma spent her holiday in Dahab with her friends. | () |
| 2 | Salma saw many starfish. | () |
| 3 | You shouldn't touch corals. | () |
| 4 | Salma climbed the mountains. | () |
| 5 | Karima wants to visit Dahab next vacation. | () |

Answers:

- | | | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1. (X) | 2. (✓) | 3. (✓) | 4. (X) | 5. (✓) |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 People enjoy to look at fish near the surface.
a. snorkeling b. camping c. skating d. shopping
- 2 We saw a colorful with five arms on the rock.
a. dolphin b. penguin c. starfish d. turtle
- 3 At the museum, you must not the old statues.
a. sing b. touch c. swim d. read
- 4 The Red Sea is famous for its beautiful that protect sea life.
a. statues b. deserts c. streets d. corals

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

sea – amazing – horseback riding – corals – mountains

Taba is a wonderful place for a vacation. Tourists enjoy seeing ⁽¹⁾ colorful starfish. They sometimes find beautiful starfish in the ⁽²⁾ People can also see bright ⁽³⁾ under the water, but they shouldn't touch them. Many visitors love going ⁽⁴⁾ by the beach and taking nice photos.

3 Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 1 Where did Salma spend her vacation?
.....
- 2 What did Salma see while scuba diving?
.....
- 3 What did Salma do in the mountains?
.....



Read, look, and notice:

اقرأ، انظر ولاحظ:

Language in use

“Should” and “Shouldn’t” «ينبغي» و «لا ينبغي»

Usage الاستخدام

- We use “should” to give advice or a good idea.
- نستخدم “should” بمعنى «ينبغي/يجب» لإعطاء نصيحة أو فكرة جيدة.
- We use “should not (shouldn’t)” to say something is not a good idea.
- نستخدم “should not (shouldn’t)” بمعنى «لا ينبغي/لا يجب» لنقول إن شيئاً ما ليس بفكرة جيدة.

Form التكوين

Affirmative

الإثبات



Subject + **should** + base verb (الفعل الأساسي) + (rest of the sentence).

Ex: – You **should** try scuba diving.



– You **should** wear sunscreen and a hat.



Negative

النفي



Subject + **should not (shouldn’t)** + base verb + (rest of the sentence).

Ex: – You **shouldn’t** go snorkeling now because the sea is rough.



– You **shouldn’t** touch the starfish.



Question

السؤال



Should + subject + base verb + (rest of the sentence)?

Ex: **Should** we go hiking in the mountains?

– Yes, we **should**. – No, we **shouldn’t**.

Should I take pictures of the corals?

– Yes, you **should**. – No, you **shouldn’t**.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 You throw trash on the beach.
a. should b. shouldn't c. must d. can
- 2 We drink milk every day.
a. shouldn't b. should to c. should d. mustn't
- 3 You should your friend when he needs you.
a. helped b. helps c. helping d. help
- 4 Should we healthy food or junk food?
a. eat b. eating c. ate d. to eat
- 5 We waste water at home.
a. should b. shouldn't c. could d. must
- 6 We be kind to animals.
a. shouldn't b. should c. can't d. should to
- 7 You shouldn't others' things without asking.
a. took b. takes c. take d. taking
- 8 You play with sharp objects.
a. shouldn't b. should c. can d. could

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 People (shouldn't) keep places clean.
- 2 You (should) eat too many sweets.
- 3 We shouldn't (touched) corals.
- 4 (We should) sleep early on Fridays?
- 5 We (shouldn't) help our parents at home.
- 6 Samir (should) cross the street without looking.
- 7 You (should) swim in deep water.
- 8 Hana (should) forget to do her homework.

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Sandy spent her vacation in a beautiful city by the sea that's filled with warm sunshine and clear blue water. She enjoyed many exciting activities with her family. She went snorkeling and saw colorful corals, starfish, and small fish swimming around her. She also went hiking in the mountains and horseback riding by the beach. Sandy said it was a wonderful trip. She thinks everyone should visit this place one day to enjoy nature and fresh air.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The underlined word "vacation" means "a".
 a. problem b. lesson c. holiday d. job
- 2 Sandy saw starfish and corals when she was
 a. hiking b. snorkeling c. riding d. sleeping

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 3 What two activities did Sandy do near the mountains?

- 4 What does the underlined pronoun "She" refer to?

- 5 Summarize the text in one sentence.

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 We (don't should) talk loudly in class.
- 2 Students shouldn't (ran) in the street.

3 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من أربع (4) جمل مستخدماً الكلمات أدناه:

"A visit to Alexandria"

(train – sea – horseback riding)

.....

.....

Lesson 3

(A) A Day Between Two Ports

Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

weekend	نهاية الأسبوع	trip	رحلة	Port Said	بورسعيد
early	مبكراً	the Corniche	الكورنيش	ships	سفن
point	نقطة	Suez Canal	قناة السويس	streets	شوارع
seagulls	طيور النورس	above	أعلى	noise	ضوضاء
ferry	عبّارة/معدّية	Port Fouad	بور فؤاد	ride	رحلة
breeze	نسيم	sea view	منظر البحر	seafood	مأكولات بحرية

Adjectives الصفات

cheerful	مبتهج	short	قصير	exciting	ممتع
quiet	هادئ	cool	بارد	tasty	لذيذ
joyful	ممتع	memorable	لا يُنسى/مميز		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
start يبدأ	started	fly يطير	flew
arrive يصل	arrived	make يصنع/يجعل	made
watch يشاهد	watched	eat يأكل	ate
sail يبحر	sailed	begin يبدأ	began
laugh يضحك	laughed		



Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

in the morning	في الصباح	walk along	يمشي بمحاذاة
take pictures	يلتقط صورًا	After that,	بعد ذلك،
across the canal	عَبْرَ القناة	by the shore	بجوار الشاطئ



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

A Fun Day in Port Said and Port Fouad

يوم ممتع في بورسعيد وبور فؤاد

Last weekend, my family and I started our trip to Port Said early in the morning. When we arrived, we walked along the Corniche and watched ships sailing near the point where the Suez Canal begins. The boys



were laughing and taking pictures while seagulls flew above them, making cheerful noise. After that, we took the ferry across the canal to Port Fouad. The ride was short but very exciting. In Port Fouad, we enjoyed the quiet streets, the cool breeze, and the beautiful sea view. Before going home, we ate tasty seafood by the shore. It was a joyful and memorable trip.

نهاية الأسبوع الماضي، بدأت أنا وعائلتي رحلتنا إلى بورسعيد مبكرًا في الصباح. عندما وصلنا، مشينا بمحاذاة الكورنيش وشاهدنا السفن تبحر بالقرب من النقطة حيث تبدأ قناة السويس. كان الأولاد يضحكون ويلتقطون صورًا بينما حلقت طيور النورس فوقهم، تصدر ضوضاء مبهجة. بعد ذلك، أخذنا العبارة لعبور القناة إلى بور فؤاد. كانت الرحلة قصيرة ولكنها مثيرة جدًا. في بور فؤاد، استمتعنا بالشوارع الهادئة والنسيم البارد ومنظر البحر الجميل. قبل العودة إلى المنزل، أكلنا مأكولات بحرية لذيذة بجوار الشاطئ. كانت رحلة ممتعة ولا تُنسى.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 It was a day full of fun and happiness.
a. dangerous b. memorable c. boring d. broken
- 2 The boys were taking of the ships and birds.
a. chairs b. snacks c. pictures d. bags
- 3 People use a to cross the canal.
a. bicycle b. bus c. train d. ferry
- 4 The cool made walking outside very nice.
a. breeze b. soil c. light d. water

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

seagulls – Corniche – ferry – breeze – sailing

Port Said is a wonderful city to visit. Visitors walk along the ⁽¹⁾ and watch ships ⁽²⁾ in the canal. Children enjoy taking pictures of the ⁽³⁾ flying above them. The breeze makes the weather cool and nice. Visitors can also ride a ⁽⁴⁾ to Port Fouad for more fun.

3 Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 1 When did the family travel to Port Said?
-

- 2 What did the family enjoy in Port Fouad?
-

- 3 Why was the trip joyful and memorable for the family?
-

B Pronunciation



Listen, look, and repeat:

استمع، انظر وردد:

Words with “oi” and “oy” Sounds

- Both “oi” and “oy” say the same sound: /ɔɪ/, like the sound in “noise” and “toy”, but the place in the word helps us choose which one to write.
- كلا الحرفين “oi” و “oy” يُنطقان بنفس الصوت: /ɔɪ/، مثل الصوت في الكلمتين “noise” و “toy”، لكن مكانهما في الكلمة يساعدنا في اختيار أيهما نكتب.

oi /ɔɪ/

- We use “oi” usually in the middle of a word. نستخدم “oi” عادةً في منتصف الكلمة.



coin
عملة



soil
تربة



point
يشير



boil
يغلي



noise
ضوضاء

oy /ɔɪ/

- We use “oy” usually at the end of a word. نستخدم “oy” عادةً في نهاية الكلمة.



boy
ولد



toy
لعبة



enjoy
يستمتع



joy
بهجة/فرحة

Extra Words

كلمات إضافية

oi /ɔɪ/

oil

زيت

royal

مَلْكي

join

يلتحق بـ/ينضم

oy /ɔɪ/

Tip!

Rhyming Words

الكلمات المتناغمة

- Rhyming words are words that sound the same at the end.

الكلمات المتناغمة هي كلمات يتشابه صوتها في النهاية.

Ex: cat → hat play → day star → car moon → spoon

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 We ate seafood at a restaurant by the sea yesterday.
a. historical b. tasty c. heavy d. noisy
- 2 Our to Aswan was full of fun and adventure.
a. exam b. game c. trip d. dream
- 3 Everyone smiled because the music made them feel
a. sad b. sleepy c. nervous d. cheerful

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Last weekend, my family went on a trip to a beautiful coastal city. We walked along the Corniche and watched ships moving slowly through the canal. Seagulls were flying above us, making cheerful sounds that filled the air. Later, we took a ferry to the other side of the city and enjoyed the cool breeze and the sunny weather. Before going home, we ate tasty seafood at a small restaurant. It was a memorable day full of fun, laughter, and relaxing moments.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The family took a to cross the canal.
a. car b. ferry c. plane d. bus
- 2 The opposite of the underlined word "memorable" is ".....".
a. easy to forget b. very short c. special d. boring

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 3 What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?

.....

- 4 How did the family feel during the trip?

.....

- 5 What is the main idea of the text?

.....



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

moment	لحظة	Blue Hole	البلو هول	the pools	الثري بولز
adventure	مغامرة	full name	الاسم بالكامل	country	دولة/بلد
Dahab	مدينة دهب	time	وقت		

Adjectives الصفات

clear	صافي	perfect	مثالي	colorful	ملون
peaceful	هادئ/مسالم	big	كبير	beautiful	جميل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضي
look	يبدو	looked
spot	يرصد/يحدد	spotted
wish	يتمنى	wished
enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

perfect for	مثالي لـ	full of	مليء بـ
Hello from	مرحبًا من	look amazing	يبدو مذهلاً
had a wonderful time	قضى وقتًا رائعًا	Wish you were here!	أتمنى لو كنت موجودًا هنا!



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Hello from Dahab!

I had a wonderful time at the Blue Hole. The water is very clear and perfect for snorkeling. I saw many colorful fish and beautiful corals. The mountains around the pools make the place look amazing. I even spotted a big starfish! You should visit the "Blue Hole" because it is fun, peaceful, and full of adventure. I enjoyed every moment here! Wish you were here!

Your friend,

Hany

مرحبًا من دهب!

قضيت وقتًا رائعًا في البلو هول. المياه نقية جدًا ومثالية للغطس. رأيت العديد من الأسماك الملونة والشعاب المرجانية الجميلة. الجبال المحيطة بالثري بولز تجعل المكان يبدو مذهلاً. حتى إنني رصدت نجم بحر كبيرًا! يجب أن تزور «البلو هول» لأنه مكان ممتع وهادئ ومليء بالمغامرة. استمتعت بكل لحظة قضيتها هنا! أتمنى لو كنت موجودًا هنا!

صديقك،

هاني

picture
صورة

Full Name: Mostafa Ahmed

Country: Cairo, Egypt

Read and notice the following tips:

اقرأ ولاحظ النصائح الآتية:

Tips for writing a post card

نصائح لكتابة بطاقة بريدية



- Choose the topic or place. اختر الموضوع أو المكان.
- Add a picture or drawing of the place. أضف صورة أو رسمًا للمكان.
- Write the message on the back (left side). اكتب الرسالة على الظهر (الجانب الأيسر).
- Add the address and the full name on the right side. أضف العنوان والاسم الكامل على الجانب الأيمن.

Ex: Mostafa Ahmed, Cairo, Egypt



Read and notice the following tips:

اقرأ ولاحظ النصائح الآتية:

Tips for making a mind map

نصائح لصنع خريطة ذهنية



- Choose the main topic.

اختر الموضوع الرئيسي.

Ex: Exciting Places in Egypt

- Write the main idea in the center.

اكتب الفكرة الرئيسية في المنتصف.

- Add main branches.

أضف الفروع الرئيسية.

Ex: Oyoun Mousa - Dahab - Port Said

- Add sub-branches for details.

أضف فروعاً فرعية للتفاصيل.

Ex: water springs

Ex:



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The weather today is hot, _____, and sunny.
a. cold b. clear c. windy d. rainy
- 2 My family loves camping in the desert because it's so _____ at night.
a. peaceful b. crowded
c. noisy d. dangerous
- 3 This book is _____ for children who enjoy exciting stories.
a. angry b. perfect c. afraid d. worried
- 4 Climbing the high mountain was a great _____ for the team.
a. problem b. adventure c. rest d. lesson

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

moment – ugly – snorkeling – clear – peaceful

Last summer, my family went on a trip to Dahab. We enjoyed swimming in the ⁽¹⁾ _____ water and watching the fish. In the afternoon, we tried ⁽²⁾ _____ to see colorful corals under the sea. The place was calm and ⁽³⁾ _____. We enjoyed every ⁽⁴⁾ _____ before going home happily.

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي :

- 1 Did you enjoy your time at the blue Hole
.....
- 2 the place is fun, peaceful, and full of adventure
.....

4 Write a post card of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب بطاقة بريدية من أربع (4) جُمل مستخدماً الكلمات أدناه:

"A trip to Dahab"

(wonderful – snorkeling – starfish)

Unit 5 Review

Vocabulary

corals	شعاب مرجانية	journey	رحلة	bedouins	البدو
trip	رحلة	tents	خيام	starfish	نجم البحر
ferry	عبّارة/مَعَدِّيَة	scuba diving	الغوص	hiking	التجول
coin	عملة	the Corniche	الكورنيش	seagulls	طيور النورس
boil	يغلي	breeze	نسيم	adventure	مغامرة
toy	لعبة	soil	تربة	point	يشير
snorkeling	الغطس	noise	ضوضاء	boy	ولد
palm trees	أشجار النخيل	enjoy	يستمتع	joy	بهجة/فرحة
water springs	ينابيع مياه	horseback riding	ركوب الخيل	traditional life	حياة تقليدية

Language

“Should” and “Shouldn’t”

- We use “should” to give advice or a good idea.
- نستخدم “should” بمعنى «ينبغي/يجب» لإعطاء نصيحة أو فكرة جيدة.
- We use “should not (shouldn’t)” to say something is not a good idea.
- نستخدم “should not (shouldn’t)” بمعنى «لا ينبغي/لا يجب» لنقول إن شيئًا ما ليس بفكرة جيدة.

Affirmative



Subject + **should** + base verb + (rest of the sentence).

Ex: – You **should** try scuba diving.

Negative



Subject + **should not (shouldn’t)** + base verb + (rest of the sentence).

Ex: – You **shouldn’t** go snorkeling now because the sea is rough.

Question



Should + subject + base verb + (rest of the sentence)?

Ex: **Should** we go hiking in the mountains?

– Yes, we **should**.

– No, we **shouldn’t**.



Reading & Conversation in Points

Lesson 1 Land of History and Heritage

- Oyoun Mousa is a beautiful place in South Sinai, Egypt.

عيون موسى هي مكان جميل في جنوب سيناء، في مصر.

- It has fresh water springs and tall palm trees.
- Long ago, Moses and his people drank water from these springs.

منذ زمن بعيد، شرب موسى وقومه الماء من هذه الينابيع.

- Today, many visitors come to enjoy the clean water and quiet desert.

اليوم، يأتي العديد من الزوار للاستمتاع بالمياه النظيفة والصحراء الهادئة.

- Visitors can take photos, walk near the springs, and learn about its history.

يمكن للزوار التقاط الصور والمشي بالقرب من الينابيع والتعرف على تاريخها.

- The site is both a natural wonder and a historical place.

المكان أعجوبة طبيعية ومكان تاريخي في آن واحد.

Lesson 2 Adventures in South Sinai

- Salma spent her vacation in Dahab with her family.

قضت سلمى عطلتها في دهب مع عائلتها.

- She went scuba diving and saw starfish.

ذهبت للغوص ورأت نجم البحر.

- She also went snorkeling and saw corals.

ذهبت أيضًا للغطس ورأت الشعاب المرجانية.

- Salma enjoyed hiking in the mountains and horseback riding by the beach.

استمتعت سلمى بالتجول في الجبال وركوب الخيل على الشاطئ.

Lesson 3 (A) A Day Between Two Ports

- The family walked along the Corniche in Port Said, watching ships and seagulls while the boys took pictures.

سارت العائلة بمحاذاة الكورنيش في بورسعيد، تشاهد السفن وطيور النورس بينما كان الأولاد يلتقطون صورًا.

- They took a short but exciting ferry ride across the Suez Canal to Port Fouad.

قاموا برحلة قصيرة لكنها مثيرة بالعبرة عبر قناة السويس إلى بور فؤاد.

- In Port Fouad, they enjoyed the quiet streets, cool breeze, and sea view.

في بور فؤاد، استمتعوا بالشوارع الهادئة، النسيم البارد، والمنظر الجميل للبحر.

- Before going home, they ate delicious seafood by the shore, making the trip memorable.

قبل العودة إلى المنزل، أكلوا مأكولات بحرية لذيذة بجوار الشاطئ، مما جعل الرحلة لا تُنسى.



Dictation

Lesson (1)

.....	رحلة	.....	عيون/ينابيع مياه
.....	خيام	.....	البدو
.....	حياة تقليدية	.....	بالقرب من
.....	أشجار النخيل	.....	زائرون
.....	تاريخ	.....	جميل
.....	جنوب سيناء	.....	تاريخي
.....	أعجوبة	.....	طبيعي

Lesson (2)

.....	الغطس	.....	الغوص
.....	نجم البحر	.....	ركوب الخيل
.....	التجول	.....	شعاب مرجانية
.....	إجازة/عطلة	.....	جبال
.....	رائع	.....	بالطبع
.....	حي/على قيد الحياة	.....	منتصف العام

Lesson (3)

.....	نهاية الأسبوع	.....	رحلة
.....	الكورنيش	.....	سفن
.....	صور	.....	طيور النورس
.....	عبارة/معدية	.....	نسيم
.....	مأكولات بحرية	.....	مبتهج
.....	عملة	.....	تربة
.....	لعبة	.....	يستمتع

Lessons (4&5)

.....	مغامرة	.....	دولة/بلد
.....	صافٍ	.....	مثالي
.....	هادئ/مسالم	.....	ملوّن



Conjugation of Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
call		do	.....
enjoy		watch	.....
walk		sail	.....
wish		begin	.....
has/have		laugh	.....
drink		arrive	.....
come		fly	.....
visit		make	.....
meet		eat	.....
see		look	.....
try		spot	.....
touch		go	.....
spend		start	.....



Writing Station

حلها صح

هذا الجزء خاص بالتدريب على حل سؤال (Writing) في الورقة الامتحانية

Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

“A trip to Port Said”

1 Think of words related to the topic and sort them in the boxes below.

فكر في كلمات ذات صلة بالموضوع وصفها في الصناديق أدناه.

Nouns

1. trip
2. the Corniche
3. ferry

Verbs

1. started
2. walked
3. took

Others

1. along
2. happily
3. yesterday

2 Form your sentences.

كوّن جملتك.

Subject (Pronoun/Noun) + verb + the rest of the sentence (تكملة الجملة)

1. Yesterday, we started our trip to Port Said.
3. We took a ferry to Port Fouad.

2. We walked along the Corniche.
4. We ate seafood happily.

3 Write your paragraph.

اكتب فقرتك.

Yesterday, we started our trip to Port Said. We walked along the Corniche. We took a ferry to Port Fouad. We ate seafood happily.

Write it yourself! اكتب بنفسك!

“Your vacation in South Sinai”

Nouns

1.
2.
3.

Verbs

1.
2.
3.

Others

1.
2.
3.

Your sentences

1.
2.
3.
4.

Your paragraph

فقرتك



Important Paragraphs

Oyoun Mousa

beautiful – water springs – desert

Oyoun Mousa is a **beautiful** place in South Sinai. It has fresh **water springs**. Many visitors come to see its clean water. They also enjoy the quiet **desert** around it.



A visit to Dahab

traveled – scuba diving – hiking

We **traveled** to Dahab last week. We went **scuba diving** and saw many starfish. We also went **hiking** in the mountains. We enjoyed horseback riding by the beach.



A Day in Port Said

went – Corniche – seagulls

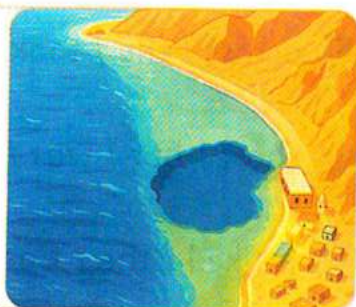
Yesterday, we **went** to Port Said. We walked along the **Corniche** and watched ships sailing. We took pictures of the **seagulls**. It was a lovely trip.



The Blue Hole

wonderful – clear – corals

The Blue Hole is a **wonderful** place. The water there is very **clear**. I went snorkeling and saw many colorful fish. I also enjoyed the beautiful **corals**.





Student's Book Activities

هذا الجزء خاص بأنشطة الكتاب المدرسي

1 Fill in the blanks using the words in the box: املأ الفراغات مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

bedouins – traditional life – water springs – tents

- 1 Many animals need clean to drink every day.
- 2 The desert people are called
- 3 The tourists slept in small under the stars.
- 4 People in the village follow a that has been passed down for generations.

2 Rewrite the sentence using should/shouldn't:

أعد كتابة الجملة مستخدماً :should/shouldn't

- 1 Your friend is tired. He goes to bed late.
.....
- 2 You touch the corals in the sea.
.....
- 3 Your brother runs in the classroom.
.....
- 4 Your friend forgets to wear a hat on a sunny day.
.....
- 5 Someone drops trash on the playground.
.....

3 Rearrange the words to make a sentence:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملة:

- 1 trip. / and / was / It / joyful / memorable / a
.....
- 2 across / the / took / canal. / the / We / ferry
.....
- 3 short / but / was / ride / very / The / exciting.
.....
- 4 walked / the / Corniche. / We / along
.....

Test on unit (5)

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. The friends went on a trip to Port Fouad. ()
2. They walked along the bridge. ()
3. They took a short bus ride. ()
4. They enjoyed the sea view. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The children went on an in the desert. They were very excited.
a. exam b. adventure c. accident d. idea
2. We felt a cool coming from the sea.
a. storm b. rain c. wave d. breeze
3. When you go snorkeling, you can see many colorful in the sea.
a. birds b. corals c. mountains d. trees
4. You throw trash in the sea.
a. should b. shouldn't c. could d. might
5. You wear sunscreen when visiting the beach.
a. should b. shouldn't c. mustn't d. can't
6. You shouldn't near the swimming pool.
a. ran b. runs c. running d. run

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

snorkeling – mountains – horseback – starfish – vacation

Hala had a wonderful vacation in Dahab with her family. She went scuba diving and saw many ⁽¹⁾ She also went ⁽²⁾ and saw colorful corals underwater. Later, she went hiking in the ⁽³⁾ and enjoyed ⁽⁴⁾ riding by the beach.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Oyoun Mousa, also called Moses Springs, is a wonderful place in South Sinai, Egypt. It has fresh water springs, tall palm trees, and a peaceful desert around it. Long ago, Moses and his people drank from these springs during their journey through the desert. Today, many visitors come to enjoy the clean water, relax in the quiet desert, and learn about its history. They also meet local bedouins and see their traditional life.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Oyoun Mousa is located in
a. North Sinai b. South Sinai c. Cairo d. Alexandria
- The opposite of the underlined word "clean" is ".....".
a. clear b. fresh c. dirty d. sweet

(B) Answer the following questions:

- What does the underlined word "its" refer to?

.....

- What can visitors learn about when they meet local bedouins?

.....

- Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

**(C) Writing****5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. You (shouldn't) drink plenty of water every day.
2. Should students (did) their homework before sleeping?
3. You (should) eat too much junk food.
4. Tourists shouldn't (touched) corals while snorkeling.

6 Punctuate the following:

1. the springs are located in Northern Egypt

2. What is Oyoun mousa also called

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:**“A Visit to Port Said”**

(the Corniche – ferry – seafood)

(A) Listening



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

- The cousins went to last week.
a. Alexandria b. Port Said c. Cairo d. Luxor
- They saw ships sailing in the
a. Red Sea b. Nile River
c. Suez Canal d. Mediterranean Sea
- They enjoyed the quiet streets and the beautiful
a. ocean b. market c. sea view d. desert

(B) Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

sounds – starfish – snorkeling – colorful

Mohab : Hi Adam! We had a wonderful vacation in Dahab.

Adam : Really? What did you do there?

Mohab : We went ⁽¹⁾ and saw many ⁽²⁾ corals.

Adam : That ⁽³⁾ fun! Did you try scuba diving too?

Mohab : Yes, and I saw beautiful ⁽⁴⁾

(C) Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer:

- We took a to cross the river and reach the other side.
a. taxi b. ferry c. bus d. train
- Our trip to the mountains was really; I will never forget it.
a. boring b. ordinary c. memorable d. noisy
- You eat too much candy; it can harm your teeth.
a. should b. shouldn't c. can d. must
- We do sports to stay healthy.
a. should b. shouldn't c. couldn't d. mustn't

**4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:**

1. Should people helped the elderly cross the street? (.....)
2. Children should play near the road. (.....)
3. We should respecting other people. (.....)
4. We shouldn't visit historical places. (.....)

(D) Reading Comprehension**5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Last weekend, my family went to Port Said. We walked along the Corniche and watched ships near the Suez Canal. The boys were laughing and taking pictures while seagulls flew above. Later, we took the ferry to Port Fouad and enjoyed the quiet streets, the cool breeze, and the sea view. Before going home, we ate seafood by the shore. It was a joyful and memorable trip.

(A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. The family walked along the Corniche. ()
2. They took the ferry to Ismailia. ()

(B) Choose the correct answer:

3. The boys were and taking pictures.
a. crying b. laughing c. sleeping d. running
4. In Port Fouad, the family enjoyed the streets.
a. quiet b. busy c. long d. hot
5. Before going home, they ate by the shore.
a. sandwiches b. seafood c. pizza d. cake

(E) Writing**6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences:**

"Oyoun Mousa"

(springs – Moses – bedouins – traditional)

6 Unit

The Lost Kite



Learning Outcomes

نتائج التعلم

Speaking

- Retell a story using key words
- Describe characters' feelings and actions
- Discuss the problem, solution, and moral with others

- إعادة سرد قصة باستخدام الكلمات الأساسية
- وصف مشاعر الشخصيات وأفعالهم
- مناقشة المشكلة، الحل، والعبرة مع الآخرين

Listening

- Answer questions about characters, events, and feelings
- Retell parts of the story after listening
- Follow simple directions mentioned in the story

- إجابة أسئلة عن الشخصيات، الأحداث، والمشاعر
- إعادة سرد أجزاء من القصة بعد الاستماع
- اتباع التوجيهات البسيطة المذكورة في القصة

Reading

- Identify characters, setting, and main events
- Recognize the problem and solution
- Understand the story's moral or lesson

- تحديد شخصيات، مكان وزمان القصة، والأحداث الرئيسية
- تعرّف المشكلة والحل
- فهم العبرة أو الدرس المستفاد من القصة

Writing

- Write short sentences or paragraphs about characters, setting, or events

- كتابة جمل أو فقرات قصيرة عن شخصيات، مكان وزمان القصة، أو الأحداث

- Describe the problem and solution
- Explain the story's moral using key vocabulary

- وصف المشكلة والحل
- شرح العبرة من القصة باستخدام المفردات الأساسية

Story Elements عناصر القصة

- The story is about a boy named Sami who loses his kite across the river. With the help of his friend Omar and a kind old man, he gets it back.

تدور القصة حول ولد يُدعى سامي الذي فقد طائرته الورقية عَبْرَ النهر. بمساعدة صديقه عُمر ورجل عجوز طيب، يستعيدها.

Title العنوان

The name of the story اسم القصة

- The Lost Kite

الطائرة الورقية الضائعة

Setting مكان وزمان القصة

Where and when the story takes place أين ومتى تجري أحداث القصة

- Where (place): a quiet village by a wide river

أين (المكان): قرية هادئة بجانب نهر واسع

- When (time): a bright and sunny afternoon متى (الزمان): ظهر يوم مشرق ومشمس

Characters

الشخصيات

People in the story الأشخاص في القصة



Omar



Sami



The old man

Plot/Problem

الحبكة/المشكلة

What happens in the story – the sequence of events from beginning to end
ما يحدث في القصة – تسلسل الأحداث من البداية إلى النهاية

- Sami is sad because a strong wind drifted his new kite across the river.

سامي حزين لأن ريحا قوية جرفت طائرته الورقية الجديدة عَبْرَ النهر.



Solution الحل

What happens to fix or solve the problem ما يحدث لإصلاح المشكلة أو حلها

- Omar and Sami asked the old man for help. The old man used a ladder to climb up the roof and returned the kite safely.

طلب عمر وسامي المساعدة من الرجل العجوز. استخدم الرجل العجوز سلماً للصعود للسطح وأعاد الطائرة الورقية بشكل آمن.

Moral (الدرس المستفاد) العبرة

The lesson or message the story teaches الدرس أو الرسالة التي تُعلّمها القصة

- Kindness makes the world brighter. اللطف يجعل العالم أكثر إشراقاً.

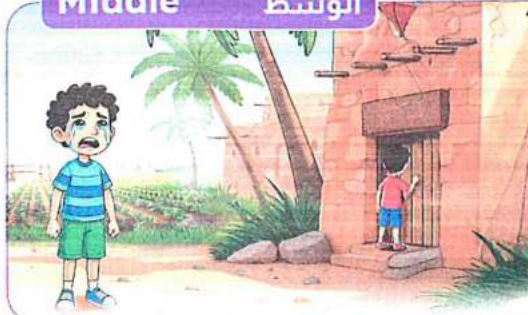
Beginning البداية



Omar and Sami went to the field to play with Sami's new red kite. They were excited to see the kite fly high.

ذهب عمر وسامي إلى الحقل ليلعبا بطائرة سامي الورقية الحمراء الجديدة. كانا متحمسين لرؤية الطائرة الورقية تطير عاليًا.

Middle الوسط



A strong wind blew the kite away. It landed on the roof of a house across the river. Sami became sad and worried that he couldn't get it back.

دفعت رياح قوية الطائرة الورقية بعيدًا. هبطت على سطح منزل عبر النهر. أصبح سامي حزينًا وقلقًا ألا يتمكن من استعادتها.

End النهاية



Omar and Sami asked an old man for help. The old man climbed up and untangled the kite from the tiles. He gave it back to Sami. Sami felt happy again.

طلب عمر وسامي المساعدة من رجل عجوز. صعد الرجل العجوز وفكّ الطائرة الورقية من البلاط. أعادها إلى سامي. شعر سامي بالسعادة من جديد.

Story Vocabulary مفردات القصة

Listen, look, and repeat:

استمع، انظر وردّد:



dates
بلح



field
حقل



unrolled the string
فكّ الخيط



drifted
انجرف



bridge
جسر



mud-brick building
مبنى من الطوب اللبن

Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

kids	أطفال	women	نساء	gently	بلطف/برقة
edge	حافة	smile	ابتسامة	nearby	مجاور/قريب
breeze	نسيم	kite	طائرة ورقية	tightly	ياحكام
fingers	أصابع	roof	سطح	shoulder	كتف
someone	شخص ما	road	طريق	vines	نبات الكرمة
beard	لحية	warmly	بحرارة	shyly	بخجل
indeed	حقاً	ladder	سلم	anxiously	بقلق
tiles	بلاط	sir	سيدي	kindness	لطف
adventure	مغامرة	ending	نهاية	palm trees	أشجار النخيل



Adjectives الصفات

wide	واسع	dusty	مُترب/مُغبر	open	مفتوح
sweet	حلو المذاق	faded	باهت	wooden	خشبي
nervous	متوتر/قلق	fine	جميل/رائع	old	قديم/كبير السن

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
carry يحمل	carried	fly يطير	flew
land يهبط	landed	begin يبدأ	began
sway يتمايل/يتأرجح	swayed	rise يعلو/يرتفع	rose
reach يصل	reached	stand يقف	stood
chase يطارد	chased	run يجري	ran
shout يصيح	shouted	meet يقابل	met
own يمتلك	owned	hold يمسك	held
cry يبكي	cried	eat يأكل	ate
whisper يهمس	whispered	see يرى	saw
cross يعبر	crossed	say يقول	said
appear يظهر	appeared	make يصنع/يجعل	made
greet يرحب	greeted		
chuckle يضحك بصوت مكتوم	chuckled		
fetch يُحضِر/يجلب	fetches		
untangle يفك	untangled		
hug يحتضن/يعانق	hugged		
nod يومئ	noded		
dance يرقص	danced		



Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

full of life	ملئنة بالحياة/مفعم بالحيوية	best friend	صديق مُقَرَّب
get tired	يشعر بالتعب	move down	يهبط
felt proud	شعر بالفخر	rushed across	هَبَّ عَبرَ
slipped through	انزلق من بين	come back	يعود/يرجع
without warning	دون سابق إنذار	his heart sank	انقبض قلبه/شعر بالحزن فجأة
once again	مرة أخرى	get ... back	يسترجع/يستعيد ...
give up	يستسلم/يأس	walked along	سار بمحاذاة
climbed around	التف/تسلق حول	creaked open	انفتح مصدرًا صريرًا
stepped forward	تقدم للأمام	flew away	طار بعيدًا
reached out	يمد يده/يصل	climb up	يتسلق صعودًا/يتسلق للأعلى
climb down	ينزل	placed ... back into	أعاد ... إلى
Here you are,	تفضل،	take care	يحرص/يعتني
saved my day	أنقذني	glowing with joy	يغمره الفرح
just like	تمامًا مثل	waved goodbye	لَوَّح مودعًا
ran back to	ركض عائداً إلى	this time	هذه المرة
soaring high	محلّقًا عاليًا	tears forming in his eyes	الدموع تتساقط من عينيه

Beginning



Omar lived in a quiet village by a wide river. The village was small, but it was full of life. Children played in the dusty streets, women carried baskets to the market, and tall palm trees swayed gently in the breeze. Omar loved his home, especially the open field near the edge of the village. One bright and sunny afternoon, Omar's best friend Sami ran to meet him. Sami carried a new red kite, and Omar held a basket of sweet dates that his father had picked that morning. "We can eat these when we get tired," Omar said with a smile. Sami laughed, "First, let's see how high my kite can fly!"

عاش عُمر في قرية هادئة بجانب نهر واسع. كانت القرية صغيرة، لكنها كانت مليئة بالحياة. كان الأطفال يلعبون في الشوارع الفترية، حمل النساء السلال إلى السوق، وأشجار النخيل الطويلة تمايلت بلطف مع النسيم. أحب عُمر منزله، وخاصةً الحقل المفتوح قرب حافة القرية. طُهر يوم مشرق ومشمس، ركض سامي، صديق عُمر القُرْب. لمقابلته. حمل سامي طائرة ورقية حمراء جديدة، وحمل عُمر سلة من تمر حلو قطفه والده ذلك الصباح. قال عُمر مبتسماً: «يمكننا أن نأكله عندما نشعر بالتعب». ضحك سامي قائلاً: «أولاً، هيا نرى إلى أي مدى يمكن لطائرتي الورقية أن تطير!»

Middle



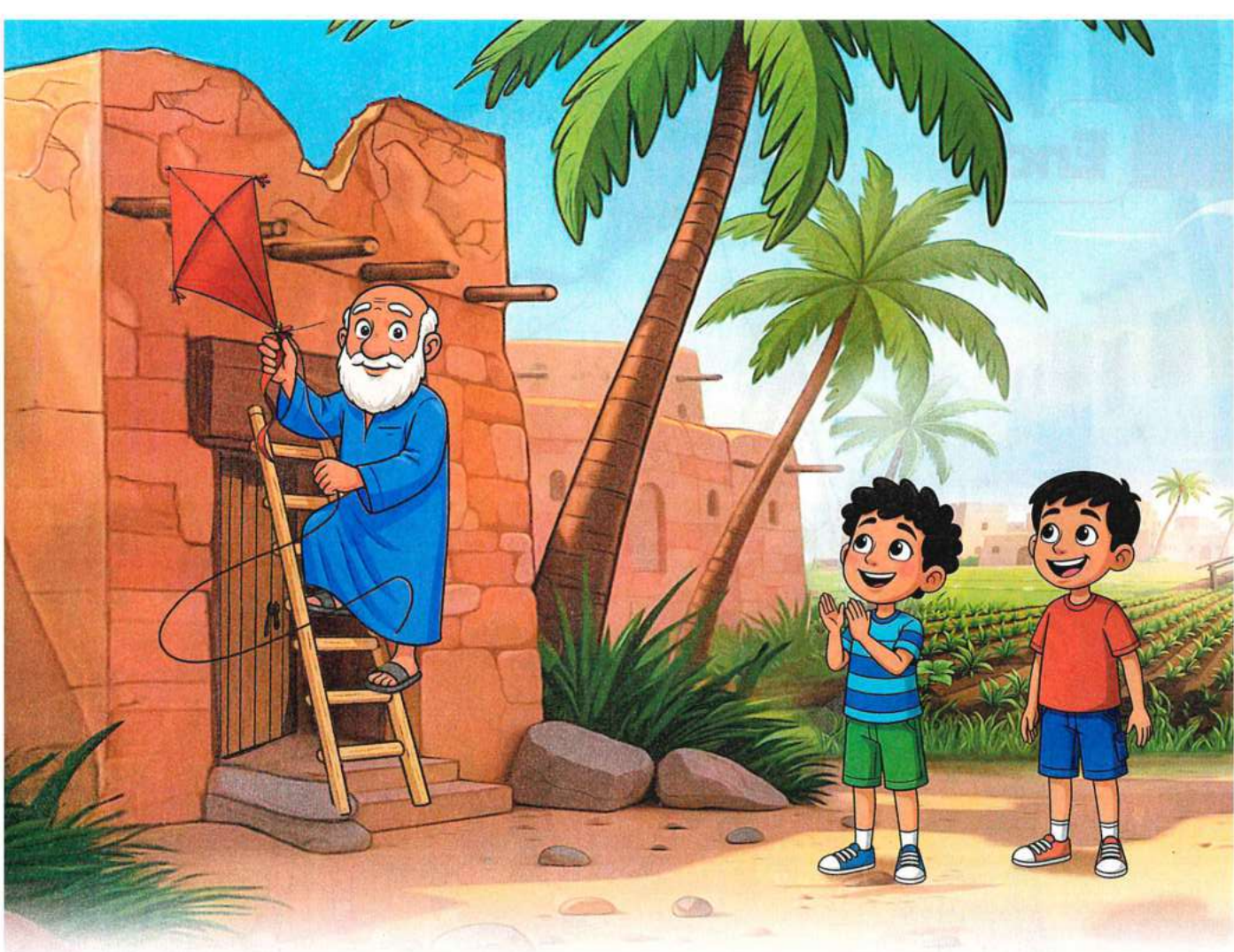
When they reached the field, the boys noticed other kids playing nearby. Some were chasing a ball, others were climbing trees, but everyone stopped to watch Sami's bright kite. Sami carefully unrolled the string, and the kite began to rise. "Look, Omar!" he shouted. "It's flying higher than the palm trees!" The red kite danced across the blue sky, moving down with the wind. The children clapped and cheered. Sami felt proud—his kite was the most beautiful thing he had ever owned. But then, without warning, a strong wind rushed across the field. Sami tried to hold the string tightly, but it slipped through his fingers. "No! Come back!" he cried. The kite flew higher and higher until it drifted across the river.

عندما وصلا إلى الحقل، لاحظ الولدان أطفالاً آخرين يلعبون في مكان قريب. كان بعضهم يطارد كرة، والبعض يتسلق أشجاراً، لكن الجميع توقف لمشاهدة طائرة سامي الورقية الزاهية. فكّ سامي الخيط بحرص، وبدأت الطائرة الورقية في الارتفاع. صاح قائلاً: «انظر يا عمر! إنها تطير أعلى من أشجار النخيل!» تمايلت الطائرة الورقية الحمراء غير السماء الزرقاء، متحركة إلى الأسفل مع الريح. صفّق الأطفال وهتفوا. شعر سامي بالفخر - كانت طائرته الورقية أجمل شيء امتلكه على الإطلاق. لكن بعد ذلك، ودون سابق إنذار، هبّت ريح قوية غير الحقل. حاول سامي أن يمسك الخيط بإحكام، لكنه انزلق من بين أصابعه. بكى قائلاً: «لا! عودي!» طارت الطائرة الورقية أعلى فأعلى حتى انجرفت غير النهر.



The kite finally landed on the roof of an old mud-brick building across the river. Sami's heart sank. "Oh no," he whispered, tears forming in his eyes. "I'll never get it back." Omar put a hand on his friend's shoulder. "Don't give up, Sami. Let's try. Maybe someone in that house can help us." The two boys walked along the dusty road, crossed the small wooden bridge over the river, and stopped in front of the old house. Its walls were faded, and vines climbed around the windows. Sami felt nervous, but Omar knocked gently on the wooden door.

هبطت الطائرة الورقية أخيرًا على سطح مبنى قديم من الطوب اللبن غُبر النهر. انقبض قلب سامي. همس قائلاً: «يا إلهي»، والدموع تتساقط من عينيه. «لن أستعيدها أبداً». وضع عُمر يده على كتف صديقه: «لا تستسلم، يا سامي. هَيَّا نجرب، ربما يمكن لشخص ما في ذلك المنزل مساعدتنا». سار الولدان بمحاذاة الطريق الترابي، وعبرا الجسر الخشبي الصغير فوق النهر، وتوقفا أمام البيت القديم. كانت جدرانها باهتة، وكان نبات الكرمة يلتف حول النوافذ. شعر سامي بالتوتر، لكن عُمر طرق الباب الخشبي برفق.



After a moment, the door creaked open. An old man with kind eyes and a white beard appeared. "Hello!" he greeted warmly. "What brings you here?" Sami stepped forward shyly. "My kite... it flew away and landed on your roof. Could you help us, please?" The old man chuckled. "Ah, I saw it! A very fine kite indeed." He fetched a small ladder and slowly climbed up. The boys watched anxiously as he reached out and untangled the kite from the tiles. Finally, he climbed down carefully and placed the kite back into Sami's hands. "Here you are, young man," he said with a smile. "Take care to hold it tighter next time."

بعد لحظة، انفتح الباب محدثًا صريرًا. ظهر رجل عجوز ذو عينيْن وديعتين ولحية بيضاء. «مرحبًا!» رَقَّب بهما بحرارة. «ما الذي أتى بكما إلى هنا؟» تقدم سامي للأمام بخجل. «طائرتي الورقية... طارت وهبطت على سطحك. هل يمكنك مساعدتنا، من فضلك؟» ضحك الرجل العجوز بصوت مكتوم. «آه، رأيتهَا! إنها طائرة ورقية رائعة حقًا». أحضر سلمًا صغيرًا وصعد ببطء. راقبه الولدان بقلق وهو يمد يده ويفك الطائرة الورقية من البلاط. أخيرًا، نزل بحذر وأعاد الطائرة الورقية إلى يدي سامي. قال مبتسمًا: «تفضَّل يا فتى. احرص على أن تمسكها جيدًا في المرة القادمة».

End



Sami hugged his kite tightly. "Thank you, sir! You saved my day," he said, his face glowing with joy. Omar added, "We will always remember your kindness." The old man nodded. "Kindness makes the world brighter, just like your red kite in the sky." The boys waved goodbye and ran back to the field. This time, Sami held the string with both hands while Omar stood beside him, ready to help. The kite rose once again, soaring high above the village. Sami and Omar laughed as it danced against the blue sky, happy that their adventure had a wonderful ending.

احتضن سامي طائرته الورقية بشدة. قال ووجهه يغمره الفرح: «شكرًا لك، يا سيدي! لقد أنقذتني!» وأضاف عُمر: «سنظل نتذكر لطفك دائمًا». أومأ الرجل العجوز. «اللطيف يجعل العالم أكثر إشراقًا، تمامًا مثل طائرتك الورقية الحمراء في السماء». لَوَّح الولدان مودعين وركضا عائدين إلى الحقل. هذه المرة، أمسك سامي الخيط بكلتا يديه بينما وقف عُمر بجانبه، مستعدًا للمساعدة. ارتفعت الطائرة الورقية مرة أخرى، محلقة عاليًا فوق القرية. ضحك سامي وعُمر وهي تتمايل تحت السماء الزرقاء، سعيدين بأن مغامرتهما انتهت نهاية رائعة.

Story Practice

Vocabulary

1 Look and write:

انظر واكتب:

dates – drifted – mud-brick building – bridge
– field – unrolled the string



2 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل الجمل مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

fetches – unroll – drifted – palm – breeze –
fields – soaring – dates

- 1 A soft moved the leaves on the trees.
- 2 I bought fresh from the market today.
- 3 First, the string. Then, tie the streamers together.
- 4 The small boat slowly on the lake.
- 5 Farmers grow many crops in their
- 6 We sat under the tall trees to stay cool.
- 7 The eagle was high above the mountains.
- 8 When I throw a ball, my dog it happily.



Characters of the story

1 Read, look, and number:

اقرأ، انظر ورقم:

1 Sami

2 Omar

3 The old man

a



b



c



2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

(A)

(B)

1 Sami ...

2 Omar ...

3 The old man ...

☐

a had a basket of sweet dates.

☐

b got the kite back to Sami.

☐

c owned a new red kite.

3 Read and write the name of the right character: اقرأ واكتب اسم الشخصية الصحيحة:

1 He cried when the wind blew his kite away.

2 He knocked an old man's house door to ask for help.

3 He untangled the kite from the tiles.

4 Who said these words? Read and choose:

من قال هذه الكلمات؟ اقرأ واختر:

1 "We can eat these when we get tired."

a. Sami

b. Omar

2 "Take care to hold it tighter next time."

a. Omar

b. The old man

3 "Thank you, sir! You saved my day."

a. Omar

b. Sami



Events of the story

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 The old man used a to climb up the roof.

- a. chair b. box c. couch d. ladder

2 The old man helped the boys because he's

- a. kind b. selfish c. tall d. thin

3 Sami felt very when the kite flew away.

- a. happy b. sad c. tired d. angry

4 The two boys crossed a small wooden to reach the house.

- a. street b. land c. river d. bridge

2 Put the events in the correct order: ضع الأحداث في الترتيب الصحيح:

☐ a Omar and Sami asked the old man to help them get the kite back.

☒ b Sami and Omar went to the field to fly Sami's new kite.

☐ c The old man used a ladder to climb up and get the kite.

☐ d Omar and Sami ran back to the field to fly the kite once again.

☐ e Suddenly, a strong wind made the kite drift across the river. It landed on the roof of an old man's house.



أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

3 Answer the following questions:

1 What did the kids do in the field?

.....

.....

2 Why did Omar bring a basket of sweet dates?

.....

.....

3 What could Sami learn from this experience?

.....

.....

4 How did Omar show that he was a good friend?

.....

.....

5 What did you learn from the story?

.....

.....

4 Look, then write TWO (2) sentences to describe each scene using the word box:

انظر، ثم اكتب جملتين (2) لوصف كل مشهد مستخدمًا صندوق الكلمات:



dates – kite – palm trees

1

2



field – string – rise

1

2



Student's Book Activities

هذا الجزء خاص بأنشطة الكتاب المدرسي

1 Word search:

البحث عن الكلمات:

m	k	v	z	c	m	q	k	u	n	r	r	l	k
b	r	i	d	g	e	d	t	a	d	y	i	p	i
u	d	f	c	f	o	a	v	r	v	k	v	o	t
p	d	i	p	i	z	i	s	g	y	g	e	n	e
e	b	e	v	t	w	d	b	q	b	r	r	y	u
r	x	l	i	r	i	a	j	r	i	j	e	d	q
g	u	d	l	e	i	c	d	a	t	e	s	r	x
r	s	x	l	e	r	p	l	u	l	j	i	i	i
b	t	a	a	s	b	a	p	b	c	l	p	f	x
h	r	b	g	x	w	o	w	i	n	d	y	t	g
s	i	o	e	g	d	h	j	e	g	e	e	e	p
r	n	h	s	d	i	d	w	v	b	e	j	d	k
t	g	k	n	u	w	s	w	z	x	t	l	r	a
k	y	y	b	k	q	p	g	l	n	j	k	q	x

river
trees
kite
dates
string
drifted
field
bridge
wind
village

2 Write (T) True or (F) False:

اكتب (T) صحيح أو (F) خطأ:

- 1 Sami carried a basket of dates. ()
- 2 Omar's kite flew high in the sky before it got stuck. ()
- 3 The boys gave up and went home. ()
- 4 They solved the problem by helping each other. ()
- 5 The story shows the importance of teamwork. ()

3 Write 2 sentences about the problem and 2 sentences about the solution:

اكتب جملتين عن المشكلة وجملتين عن الحل:

Plot/Problem	Solution
.....	
.....	
.....	
.....	
.....	

Test

on unit (6)

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. A little girl's dog got stuck in a box. ()
2. Amir looked for a long rope. ()
3. Amir pulled the dog up safely. ()
4. The girl thanked him happily. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The crowd when the team scored a goal.
a. slept b. cried c. cheered d. brought
2. The new connects two far parts of the city.
a. door b. bridge c. chair d. window
3. She carried a full of fresh vegetables.
a. desk b. sheet c. basket d. toy
4. Adam felt before his school presentation.
a. nervous b. stuck c. slept d. passed
5. Sami should the old man for helping him.
a. thanking b. thanks c. thank d. thanked
6. When they reached the field, the boys other boys playing nearby.
a. noticed b. notice c. notices d. noticing

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

slipped – faded – drifted – string – wind

Last weekend, Rana was at the beach. She was playing with her kite when a strong ⁽¹⁾..... rushed across the beach. Rana tried to hold the ⁽²⁾..... tightly, but it ⁽³⁾..... through her fingers. The kite ⁽⁴⁾..... away. She was very sad. She couldn't find it anywhere.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

One afternoon, Lina was playing with her purple balloon. She held the string tightly, but a strong wind made the balloon drift away. It **got stuck** in a tall tree. Lina felt sad. She thought that she had lost the balloon forever. She was crying when the gardener at the park saw her. He used a ladder to climb up the tree and get the balloon back for Lina. Lina smiled and thanked the gardener for his kindness.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Lina was playing in the
a. home b. park c. school d. airport
2. The opposite of the underlined phrase "**got stuck**" is "got".
a. free b. tired c. lost d. hungry

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. How did Lina lose her balloon?

.....

4. What could happen if the gardener was not there?

.....

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

**(C) Writing****5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. My kite flew away and (land) on the roof.
2. Sami carried (an) new red kite.
3. (Does) the old man help Sami and Omar? – Yes, he did.
4. The village was small, (or) it was full of life.

6 Punctuate the following:

1. Everyone stopped to watch sami's bright kite

2. could you help us, please

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

"A visit to the village"

(palm trees – river – field)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review 2

Vocabulary Summary

Unit 4 Let's Celebrate



exchange gifts



perform music



play a game



eat special food



socialize with friends

Unit 5 Exploring Wonders in Egypt



water springs



journey



bedouins



tents



traditional life

Unit 6 The Lost Kite



dates



field



unrolled the string



drifted



bridge



mud-brick building

Language Summary

Unit 4 Let's Celebrate

Adjectives

- Adjectives are words that describe nouns. They tell us what something looks, feels, sounds, or smells like. Adjectives describe ...

people

tall – short –
kind – friendly
– happy – sad
– excited

objects

big – small –
colorful – shiny
– soft – round
– brown

places

quiet – busy/
crowded –
peaceful –
beautiful

feelings/events

exciting/amazing/
wonderful – fun
– boring

- Ex: – We have **friendly** neighbors.
– Noha has **shiny** hair.
– We moved to a **quiet** city.
– We watched a **boring** movie at the cinema. We didn't enjoy it.

Unit 5 Exploring Wonders in Egypt

"Should" and "Shouldn't"

- We use "should" to give advice or a good idea.
- We use "should not (shouldn't)" to say something is not a good idea.

Affirmative



Subject + **should** + base verb + (rest of the sentence).

Ex: – You **should** visit Dahab next vacation.

Negative



Subject + **should not (shouldn't)** + base verb + (rest of the sentence).

Ex: – We **shouldn't** throw trash on the ground.

Question



Should + subject + base verb + (rest of the sentence)?

Ex: **Should** he take a break?

- Yes, he **should**. – No, he **shouldn't**.

(A) Listening

نصوص الاستماع بنهاية الكتاب



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. We celebrate Labor Day on May 1st. ()
2. At Maria's school, students made posters showing different jobs. ()
3. The students explained that all jobs are important. ()
4. The students sang for all workers, showing appreciation. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People don't with their neighbors as much as they used to.
 a. socialize b. make c. arrive d. prepare
2. There was a strong wind, and our boat out to sea.
 a. drifted b. ran c. left d. walked
3. The garden is surrounded by a tall wooden
 a. door b. fence c. window d. table
4. You appreciate your teacher's efforts.
 a. doesn't b. shouldn't c. won't d. should
5. Ezz spent a vacation in South Sinai.
 a. peace b. peaceful c. relax d. beauty
6. The baby plays with a soft toy. It is shaped like a ball.
 a. round b. friendly c. kind d. quiet

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:****bus – breeze – Suez Canal – memorable – ferry**

Last Friday, I visited Port Said with my cousins. We walked along the shore and watched big ships sailing to the ⁽¹⁾..... . Later, we crossed to Port Fouad on the ⁽²⁾..... . We enjoyed the cool ⁽³⁾..... and the amazing sea view. We had a delicious seafood meal. It was a ⁽⁴⁾..... trip!

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

During our mid-year vacation, Fares visited Sinai with his friends. In Dahab, they went diving and snorkeling in the clear water and saw colorful sea creatures. They also spent a few days in Sharm El-Sheikh, where they rode a boat and shopped in the lively markets. On their last day, they stopped at Moses Springs to see the natural springs and tall palm trees. Sinai's peaceful deserts, lively towns, and amazing beaches make it perfect for everyone to explore.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined adjective "peaceful" means ".....".
a. exciting b. quiet c. long d. big
2. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to
a. Dahab b. the desert c. Sinai d. the beach

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What does the text mainly talk about?

.....

4. When did Fares visit Sinai?

.....

5. Why is Sinai a perfect place for everyone to explore?

.....

**(C) Writing****5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. It was a (joy) celebration!
2. You shouldn't (touching) corals.
3. We (shouldn't) be kind to elderly people.
4. We decorated the place with (color) balloons.

6 Punctuate the following:

1. Omar's best friend sami ran to meet him

.....

2. did you go snorkeling too

.....

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

"My birthday celebration"

(blow out – giveaways – delicious)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Noha spent her summer vacation in Dahab. ()
2. Noha went scuba diving at the Blue Hole. ()
3. In Dahab, Noha only went scuba diving and hiking in the mountains. ()
4. Noha loved Dahab, but she won't visit it again. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Some guided the tourists through the desert.
 a. sailors b. farmers c. bedouins d. pilots
2. This gift is beautifully
 a. cooked b. wrapped c. brought d. bought
3. The Great Pyramid of Giza is a famous ancient
 a. wonder b. stone c. shape d. hole
4. Salma was for her birthday party.
 a. exciting b. friendly c. shiny d. excited
5. Everybody should the truth.
 a. tell b. tells c. told d. telling
6. We use natural resources carelessly.
 a. shouldn't b. should c. must d. have

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:****games – gathering – hide-and-seek – performed – socialized**

Last Friday was a very special day. My family had a big ⁽¹⁾ at my grandparents' house. We talked and laughed together. My father ⁽²⁾ music, and we all sang. The food was tasty. The children played ⁽³⁾ in the garden. We also played board ⁽⁴⁾ and took many pictures.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

At the end of the school year, we had a wonderful party. The playground was full of balloons and colorful lights. Students and teachers also hung shiny ribbons. Our teachers gave certificates of appreciation to hard-working students and said kind words. We also thanked our teachers for their efforts throughout the year. Everyone clapped and laughed cheerfully. The best part was when colorful fireworks lit up the sky. It was an unforgettable celebration full of fun and happiness.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "their" refers to the
a. students b. teachers c. certificates d. ribbons
2. The underlined word "unforgettable" means
a. memorable b. forgettable c. quiet d. wonderful

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. Who helped decorate the place of the party?

.....

4. What was the main reason for having this party?

.....

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

**(C) Writing****5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. A/An (new) man with a white beard appeared.
2. You (should) waste water when brushing your teeth.
3. (Did) I bring my English book today? – Yes, you should.
4. Omar held a basket of (sweets) dates.

6 Punctuate the following:

1. We took the ferry to port Fouad

2. what did the students do after winning

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

“Labor Day”

(workers – efforts – celebrate)

.....

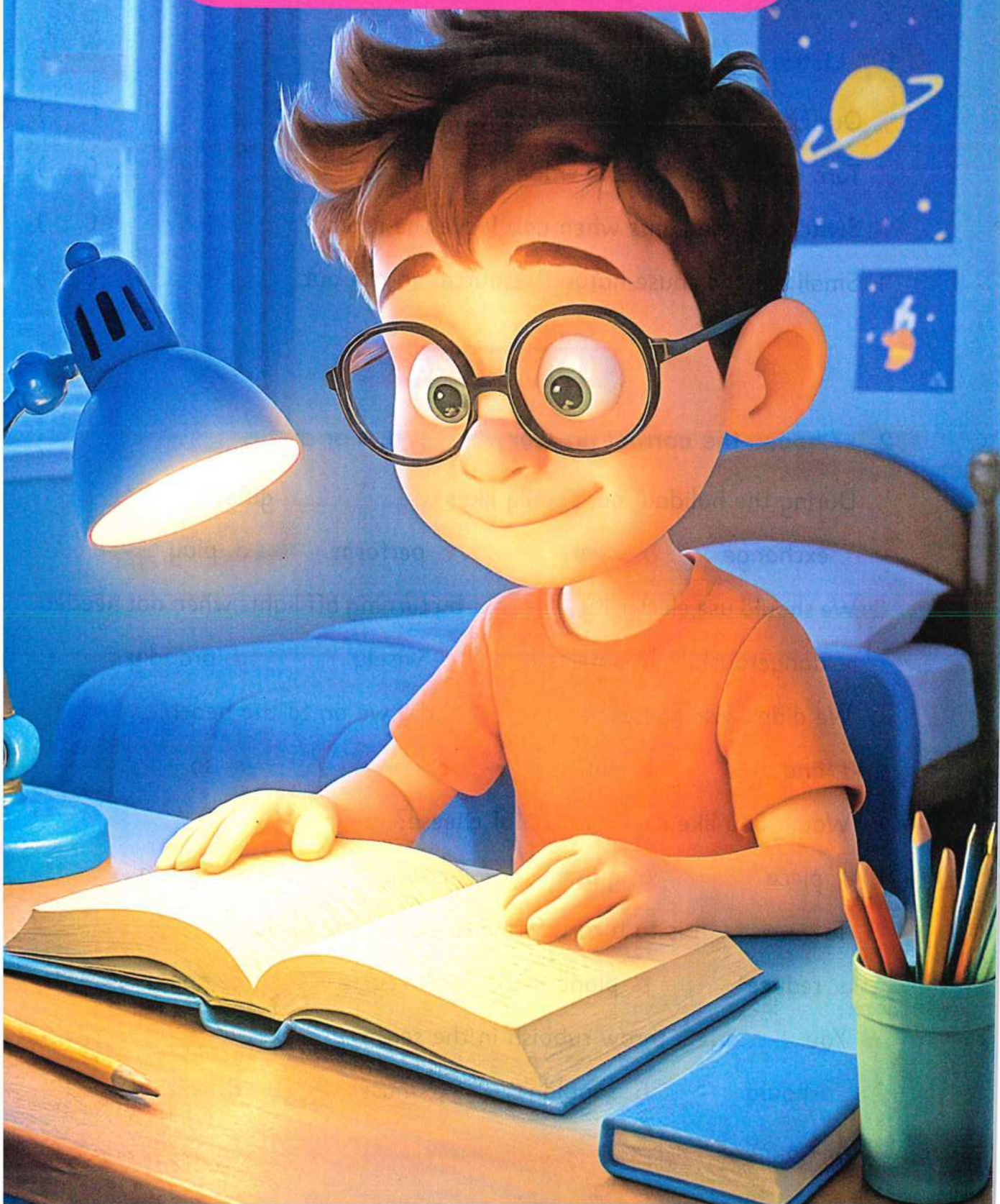
.....

.....

.....

.....

Final Tests



Test

1

(A) Listening

نصوص الاستماع بنهاية الكتاب



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Our Earth gives us water, electricity, and gas. ()
2. Turn off the fan to save water. ()
3. Switch off the lights when you leave the room. ()
4. Small actions cause natural resources to run out. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. During the holiday, our family likes to gifts.
a. exchange b. wear c. perform d. play
2. We should use electricity by turning off lights when not needed.
a. dangerously b. carelessly c. wisely d. proudly
3. We didn't visit the park, did we go to the beach.
a. and b. but c. nor d. so
4. Would you like a of cheese?
a. piece b. glass c. bottle d. carton
5. To is to turn waste into something useful.
a. reduce b. plant c. recycle d. apply
6. You throw rubbish in the sea.
a. should b. shouldn't c. must d. will

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

adapt – village – tents – wrote – advantage

Salma and Maha talked about their school project. Maha and her cousins compared life in the city with life in the ⁽¹⁾ Salma ⁽²⁾ about the desert and how people lived in ⁽³⁾ and used wells. They both learned how people ⁽⁴⁾ to different environments.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Everyone can help keep our planet clean and healthy. We can start by using less paper and sending emails instead of letters. Walking, riding bikes, or sharing cars helps reduce pollution in cities. When shopping, using tote bags is better than plastic bags because they protect sea animals and nature. We must always throw litter in bins and remind others to do the same. Together, we can make Earth a cleaner and greener place for everyone.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined pronoun "they" refers to "the".
a. plastic bags b. tote bags c. animals d. bins
- The underlined verb "remind" means "to make someone something".
a. remember b. help c. clean d. protect

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What does the text talk about?

.....

4. How can using tote bags help the environment?

.....

5. Where should we throw litter?

.....

(C) Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. I planted flowers (but) watered them every morning.
2. Cairo is a busy and (crowd) city.
3. She (cleans) her room yesterday.
4. You (shouldn't) eat healthy food every day.

6 Punctuate the following:

1. On monday, our school held a picnic

.....

2. how do you imagine living in a desert

.....

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

“Helping others”
(food – elderly – promise)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test

2

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Amr and Salma talked about the friends' gathering. ()
2. Amr played chess with his uncle Kareem. ()
3. Salma played hide-and-seek with her cousin. ()
4. Everyone exchanged shoes happily. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The fishermen their boats early in the morning.
a. fly b. sail c. drive d. challenge
2. Salma ate a cucumber. It made a loud sound.
a. soft b. wise c. crunchy d. colorful
3. The children played in the park all afternoon.
a. quiet b. run c. quietly d. quietness
4. We slept in small under the stars.
a. televisions b. computers c. tents d. cupboards
5. They the room because it was dirty.
a. cleaned b. clean c. cleaning d. cleans
6. I ate two of bread this morning.
a. glasses b. bars c. cups d. slices

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

again – Recycle – more – less – protect

The teacher talked to the class about the 3Rs. She explained that they stand for Reduce, Reuse, and (1)..... . Reduce means using (2)..... . Reuse means using things (3)....., like bottles. Recycle means making new things from old ones. The students learned that the 3Rs help (4)..... our planet.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Last week, Ali helped his father in the kitchen. First, he washed his hands and cleaned the table. His father cut the vegetables while Ali placed the bread and cheese on the counter. They made sandwiches with lettuce and tomatoes. Ali's father explained why cleanliness is important while cooking. When the food was ready, Ali felt proud and happy. His father smiled and said, "You did a great job, Ali! Let's call the family to eat together."

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined verb "placed" means ".....".
 a. cut b. put c. shut d. left
2. The underlined pronoun "he" refers to ".....".
 a. Ali's father b. Ali c. the food d. the family

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the general idea of the text?

.....

4. What did Ali's father explain while cooking?

.....

5. Why did Ali feel proud and happy?

.....

**(C) Writing****5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. I have two **(apple)** in my bag.
2. We shouldn't **(wasting)** water while brushing our teeth.
3. I wanted to go outside, **(and)** it started to rain.
4. **(Does)** you help your mother in the kitchen yesterday?

6 Punctuate the following:

1. omar lived in a quiet village by a river

2. why should we save electricity

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

“Your trip to Port Said”
(the Corniche – ferry – seafood)

Test

3

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Reem helped her mother in the dining room last week. ()
2. Reem placed the bread, rice, and vegetables on the counter. ()
3. Reem's mother talked to her about decorating. ()
4. Reem made delicious sandwiches and felt happy. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We saw many flying over the sea in Port Fouad.
a. crabs b. starfish c. corals d. seagulls
2. It's important to plastic bottles and paper to protect our planet.
a. throw b. recycle c. apply d. use
3. What you eat for dinner yesterday?
a. do b. did c. does d. doing
4. A/An is a long line of water that moves to the sea.
a. lake b. pond c. river d. ocean
5. I bring my camera on the trip? – Yes, you should.
a. Will b. Should c. Do d. Didn't
6. She drank a of water after running.
a. bottle b. slice c. piece d. bar

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

clothes – fireworks – decorated – unforgettable – clap

The school playground was full of color and joy during the celebration. Balloons and lights ⁽¹⁾ the fences. Students wore special ⁽²⁾, played games, and took photos. At night, ⁽³⁾ lit up the sky, making it an ⁽⁴⁾ and happy day for everyone.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Last weekend, Lina and her brother Kareem visited a peaceful village near the city. The weather was warm and sunny. They walked along the river and saw tall trees and colorful flowers. Kareem took photos of birds flying over the water. A kind farmer told them stories about life in the village. Later, they went to the market and bought apples and bananas. The people were friendly, and the village felt calm and beautiful.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined adjective "calm" means ".....".
a. noisy b. quiet c. awful d. bad
2. The underlined word "her" refers to ".....".
a. Kareem b. Lina c. the kind farmer d. the village

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. Who told Lina and Kareem stories about life in the village?
.....

4. What did they buy from the market?
.....

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

(C) Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. The (kindness) teacher helped the new student.
2. I (watch) a movie last night.
3. We should (visits) the museum this weekend.
4. Would you like tea (and) coffee with your breakfast?

6 Punctuate the following:

1. they bought tomatoes, cucumbers, and bread

.....

2. When did kareem and Fatma prepare the food

.....

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

"Celebrating Labor Day"

(honor – event – workers)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test

4

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Sami and Omar spent the weekend in a small city. ()
2. Sami and Omar walked beside the river. ()
3. The sellers at the market were friendly. ()
4. Sami and Omar didn't enjoy the life in the village. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An is everything around us, like air, water, plants, and animals.
a. building b. oasis c. environment d. village
2. Sami the string slowly, so his kite began to rise into the sky.
a. hid b. rolled c. rode d. unrolled
3. People who live in the desert are called
a. bedouins b. farmers c. engineers d. villagers
4. We watched a/an movie last night with great music.
a. exciting b. excited c. tired d. bored
5. There isn't much in the bowl.
a. rice b. oranges c. tomatoes d. eggs
6. Ali didn't go outside it started to rain.
a. or b. because c. but d. nor

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

park – together – packed – everyone – biscuits

Noura and her mother prepared for a picnic last weekend. They bought milk, chocolate, ⁽¹⁾, and juice. They also ⁽²⁾ bread, cheese, and butter for sandwiches. Noura added apples for ⁽³⁾ It was a lot of work, but they were happy to prepare everything ⁽⁴⁾

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Last weekend, Omar and his family traveled to Port Said for a short trip. They arrived early and walked along the Corniche, watching huge ships sail through the Suez Canal. Omar took photos while his sister fed the seagulls. Later, they rode the ferry to Port Fouad and enjoyed the calm sea breeze. Before leaving, they ate delicious seafood at a small restaurant by the shore. It was a fun and unforgettable day for the whole family.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The opposite of the underlined adjective "huge" is ".....".
 a. small b. tall c. short d. big
2. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to "the".
 a. day of the trip b. seafood c. ferry d. Corniche

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. When did Omar and his family go on their trip?

.....

4. What did the family do before going home?

.....

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

**(C) Writing****5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. I didn't (studying) the night before the exam.
2. She needs (a) umbrella for the rain.
3. Should I take a jacket? – Yes, you (shouldn't).
4. The (shine) car was parked near the house.

6 Punctuate the following:

1. Oyoun mousa is also called Moses Springs

2. did you go snorkeling, emad?

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

“Your lost toy”

(friend – slipped – grateful)

Test

5

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Omar lived in a quiet village near a wide river. ()
2. Omar and Sami played with a red kite in the park. ()
3. The kite flew high until it drifted away across the lake. ()
4. The boys decided to hide the kite. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Samir wrapped the he had bought for his friends.
a. guests b. giveaways c. ideas d. sites
2. We helped a/an man cross the street. He was old.
a. young b. teenage c. elderly d. elder
3. He has three in his backpack.
a. water b. cheese c. apples d. milk
4. We recycle paper it helps protect the environment.
a. so b. because c. nor d. but
5. Did the students their exams last Monday?
a. finish b. finished c. finishing d. finishes
6. Saturn is a with rings around it. It moves around the sun.
a. planet b. garden c. city d. village



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

ladder – greeted – stuck – grateful – tight

It was an old man's house. He ⁽¹⁾ Sami and Omar kindly when they knocked on the door. Sami explained that his kite was ⁽²⁾ on the roof. The man climbed a ⁽³⁾, got the kite down carefully, and gave it back to Sami. The boys felt ⁽⁴⁾ and happy.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

On May 1st, Nour and her classmates celebrated Labor Day at school. Their teacher explained why it's important to thank workers for their hard work. The students made colorful cards and gave them to the school workers. Nour also wrote a note for her mother, who works at a hospital. Later, they sang songs and shared snacks together. Everyone felt proud and happy to celebrate this special day and show appreciation for all workers.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined pronoun "them" refers to ".....".
a. the cards b. the workers c. the students d. the teachers
- The underlined adjective "special" means "..... and important".
a. boring b. different c. happy d. busy

(B) Answer the following questions:

- What does the text mainly talk about?
.....

- When is Labor Day celebrated?
.....

- What did the students do to show appreciation to the school workers?
.....

(C) Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. There is (an) chair near the window.
2. The students cleaned the classroom (but) arranged the chairs.
3. We shouldn't (touching) wild animals at the park.
4. The park is quiet and (beauty) in the morning.

6 Punctuate the following:

1. Last friday, we went on a trip

2. did you call your cousin yesterday

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

“Different places in the environment”

(city – adapt – challenges)

Test

6

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Oyoun Mousa is in South Aswan. ()
2. It has fresh water springs and tall palm trees. ()
3. Long ago, Moses drank honey there. ()
4. Visitors now learn about its special weather. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I had a basket of sweet
a. onions b. carrots c. dates d. lemons
2. Factories should reduce to keep the air clean.
a. water b. production c. lights d. pollution
3. A/An is a green place with water in the desert.
a. forest b. oasis c. mountain d. island
4. I think we go to the park today. The weather is nice.
a. should b. shouldn't c. can't d. don't
5. The classroom is clean bright today.
a. or b. but c. and d. so
6. Pharaohs Egypt for many years.
a. rule b. rules c. ruled d. ruling

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:****riverbank – beach – scuba diving – hiking – planned**

Salma told Karima about her vacation in Dahab. She went ⁽¹⁾ and saw starfish and corals. She also went ⁽²⁾ in the mountains and horseback riding by the ⁽³⁾ Karima liked the idea and ⁽⁴⁾ to visit Dahab next time.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

One windy afternoon, Mariam and her brother Ali were flying a new kite near their house. Suddenly, a strong wind carried it away, and it landed on the roof of an old house. An elderly woman came out and smiled kindly. She climbed a short ladder and carefully brought the kite down. Mariam and Ali thanked her happily. The woman said, "Always hold on tight!" They laughed, waved goodbye, and watched their kite fly high again in the clear sky.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the ".....".
a. kite b. old house c. ladder d. roof
- The underlined word "tight" means ".....".
a. carelessly b. loosely c. strongly d. weakly

(B) Answer the following questions:

- When did Mariam and Ali fly their kite?

.....

- What advice did the elderly woman give to Mariam and Ali?

.....

- Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....



(C) Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. We bought five **(book)** from the store.
2. My brother is tall and **(friend)**.
3. They **(going)** to the market last Friday.
4. She is tired, **(so)** she wants to finish her homework.

6 Punctuate the following:

1. i saw tall, green trees, wide fields, and a big stream

.....

2. what does "Recycle" mean, Miss salma?

.....

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

"Your trip to Al Azhar Park"

(lunch – family – arrange)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test

7

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Kareem and Fatma went to the supermarket. ()
2. They bought fruits, eggs, and bread. ()
3. They packed the food in bags. ()
4. They gave the food to rich families. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The walls were decorated with colorful, shiny and bright lights.
a. cakes b. carpets c. wishes d. ribbons
2. The carried people and vehicles across the canal safely.
a. ferry b. train c. airplane d. bus
3. We should reduce to help keep our planet clean.
a. energy b. pollution c. water d. stress
4. Children swim alone in deep water. It's unsafe.
a. should b. shouldn't c. will d. can
5. She studied hard, she got high marks.
a. so b. or c. but d. no
6. Ahmed is a boy who always helps his friends.
a. kind b. kindness c. loudly d. beauty

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

tote bags – throw – paper – produce – nature

We can all help keep Earth clean and healthy. We should use less ⁽¹⁾ and walk or ride bikes to reduce pollution. Using ⁽²⁾ instead of plastic ones is better for ⁽³⁾ We should all ⁽⁴⁾ litter in bins and work together to protect our planet.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Last Friday, Mona and her father went on a trip to the Nile River. They woke up early and took a small boat. The river was calm, and they saw fishermen catching fish. Mona enjoyed watching the green farms and tall palm trees. Mona and her father sat under a tree, ate sandwiches, and listened to farmer's stories about the Nile. It was a beautiful day, and Mona felt happy and thankful for the special time together.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "her" refers to ".....".
a. Mona's father b. Mona's mother c. the farmer d. Mona
2. The opposite of the underlined adjective "tall" is ".....".
a. tiny b. huge c. short d. little

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the text?

.....

4. Where did Mona and her father sit to eat sandwiches?

.....

5. Why did Mona feel happy at the end of the day?

.....

(C) Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. He doesn't eat meat, (but) does he drink milk.
2. He ate a (bar) of bread.
3. We (doesn't) call our friends last night.
4. Should we (going) hiking tomorrow?

6 Punctuate the following:

1. how can we save water

2. Omar and waleed use tote bags

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

"Your trip to the mountains"

(rocks – paths – peaceful)

Test

8

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Talia went to the ocean with her family. ()
2. The weather was cold, but the view was nice. ()
3. She saw a wide river between the rocks. ()
4. Talia and her family walked on small bridges and took photos. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There are many to using renewable energy. It's good for the environment.
a. advantages **b.** problems **c.** mistakes **d.** dangers
2. We watched the children the stairs in the museum.
a. delivering **b.** climbing **c.** selling **d.** packing
3. We should enough water in hot weather.
a. drinks **b.** drinking **c.** drink **d.** drank
4. A/An is a big place with many people, cars, and tall buildings.
a. village **b.** oasis **c.** city **d.** desert
5. Yesterday, Sara a letter to her friend.
a. write **b.** wrote **c.** writing **d.** writes
6. The classroom was after the students cleaned it.
a. tidy **b.** tight **c.** loud **d.** slow

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:****traditional – springs – palm – visitors – tents**

Oyoun Mousa is a beautiful place in South Sinai, Egypt. It has fresh springs and tall (1) trees. Long ago, Moses and his people drank from these (2) Today, (3) enjoy the clean water, meet bedouins, and learn about the site's history and (4) life.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

On Monday, Omar's family and neighbors went on a picnic to Al Azhar Park. Omar and his sister Salma helped prepare the food. They arranged fruits and vegetables like tomatoes, cucumbers, and bananas. Salma poured orange juice while Omar placed bread and cheese for sandwiches. After everyone ate, Omar and Salma packed the extra food and gave it to the neighbors who couldn't attend. The children enjoyed the beautiful park, played games, and felt proud to share food with others. It was a wonderful day.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ".....".
a. park b. extra food c. class d. day
- The underlined adjective "wonderful" means ".....".
a. amazing b. boring c. sad d. calm

(B) Answer the following questions:

- Where did the family and neighbors go for a picnic?
.....

- Why did the children feel proud at the end of the day?
.....

- Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

**(C) Writing****5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. I ate 2 **(glass)** of cheese for breakfast.
2. We can walk to the park **(nor)** take the bus.
3. Watching the fireworks was an **(excitement)** experience.
4. My sister **(buys)** a new bag last week.

6 Punctuate the following:

1. small actions can make a big difference

2. which kind of fruit did you get

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

“How to save resources”

(run out – wisely – difference)

Test

9

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. On August 1st, we celebrated Labor Day. ()
2. We joined an event in our neighborhood. ()
3. Workers were thanked for their dreams. ()
4. I made a gift for my father. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We must save water so it doesn't in the future.
a. break down b. fall down c. run out d. turn on
2. At the party, everyone had time to They made new friends.
a. escape b. hide c. socialize d. sleep
3. We walked across the to reach the other side of the river.
a. bridge b. street c. desert d. ladder
4. Nada bought a of milk from the store.
a. bar b. slice c. piece d. carton
5. Do you want juice milk with your breakfast?
a. because b. but c. nor d. or
6. You wear a helmet when you ride a bike.
a. should b. shouldn't c. can't d. won't



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

juice – healthy – thankful – packed – awful

Last Monday, our school had a picnic in Al Azhar Park. We prepared a (1) lunch and some snacks. At the park, we drank milk and orange (2) and ate bread with cheese. After lunch, we (3) fresh food and gave it to people in need. Everyone felt happy and (4)

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Last Friday, Maya celebrated her birthday at home with her family and friends. She woke up early and decorated the living room with her sister. Together, they hung balloons, ribbons, and colorful lights. Her mother baked a big chocolate cake, and Maya placed candles on top. When her friends arrived, they played games, sang songs, and ate delicious food. Maya felt very happy when she blew out the candles and made a special wish.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined pronoun "She" refers to ".....".

a. Maya

b. Maya's mother

c. Maya's sister

d. Maya's friend

2. When Maya blew out the candles, they burning.

a. kept

b. started

c. made

d. stopped

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the text?

.....

4. Who helped Maya decorate the living room?

.....

5. When was the celebration?

.....

(C) Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Students should (listening) carefully in class.
2. The school trip was fun and (amazed).
3. Omar ate a (carton) of cookies.
4. He didn't (went) to school yesterday.

6 Punctuate the following:

1. what did you bring to the picnic
.....
2. dad went to the market early
.....

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

“Oyoun Mousa”
(springs – bedouins – tents)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

(A) Listening



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

1. Ahmed and Omar visited a/an near the city.
 a. town b. village c. farm d. island
2. They noticed how and fresh the air was.
 a. awful b. bad c. clean d. dirty
3. The life there was very from the busy city.
 a. similar b. like c. same d. different

(B) Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

less – hear – waste – Reuse

Ayman : Good morning, Layan! Did you ⁽¹⁾ about the 3Rs?

Layan : Hi, Ayman. No, I didn't. What are the 3Rs?

Ayman : They stand for "Reduce, ⁽²⁾, and Recycle".

Layan : What does "Reduce" mean?

Ayman : It means using ⁽³⁾ For example, don't ⁽⁴⁾
 water or electricity.

**(C) Vocabulary and Structures****3 Choose the correct answer:**

1. Our neighborhood Labor Day on May 1st.
 a. decorated b. wrapped c. hung d. celebrated
2. Did Hana to the party yesterday?
 a. went b. going c. go d. goes
3. Amgad went and saw many starfish.
 a. horseback riding b. hiking
 c. scuba diving d. climbing
4. The balloons flew in the air.
 a. color b. colors c. colorful d. coloring

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

1. Our help teacher helped us with the homework. (.....)
2. We stayed at home so it was too hot to go out. (.....)
3. What does Ali do at the park yesterday? (.....)
4. You should went to the doctor when you are sick. (.....)

(D) ■■ Reading Comprehension**5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Last Friday, Sama helped her brother Zein celebrate his birthday. He was so excited. Sama and Zein worked together to clean and decorate the living room. Sama held the balloons while Zein tied them, and their father hung the ribbons and lights. Their mother baked a huge cake, and Zein added the candles. When their friends arrived, they played games, sang songs, and enjoyed delicious snacks. Zein's smile made the whole day special and unforgettable.

**(A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False:**

1. Last Monday, Sama helped her brother celebrate his birthday. ()
2. They worked together to clean and decorate the living room. ()

(B) Choose the correct answer:

3. Sama and Zein's father the ribbons and lights.
a. held b. tied c. hung d. bought
4. Zein added the on the cake.
a. ribbons b. balloons c. candles d. lights
5. The underlined adjective "delicious" means
a. small b. bad c. tasty d. big

(E) Writing**6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences:****"A family gathering"**

(weekend – special food – play games – exchange gifts)

Listening Scripts

Lesson (1) Practice

Unit (1)

Page 15

Life in the desert is different from life in the city. In the desert, people live in tents. They travel on camels, and they use wells to get water. In the city, people live in tall buildings. They use cars and buses, and there are a lot of shops there.

Unit (2)

Page 51

My name is Amal. At home, I teach my children the 3Rs: Reduce, Reuse, and Recycle. We reuse shopping bags many times. We recycle bottles instead of throwing them away. We also turn off the lights to save electricity. Small actions can help protect our planet and stay clean.

Unit (3)

Page 85

Yesterday, Malak and Lamia prepared food packages to help poor families in their neighborhood. They went early to the market with their parents. They bought vegetables, fruits, and bread. They packed the food, then delivered it to the homes. They also helped an elderly woman. It was hard work, but they enjoyed it.

Unit (4)

Page 129

Last month, Mazen's big family had a wonderful gathering at his grandparents' house. They talked, laughed, and listened to his aunt perform music on her guitar. The

children played hide-and-seek in the garden. After lunch, they exchanged gifts, took many photos, and spent a lovely day with friends and family.

Unit (5)

Page 164

Oyoun Mousa in South Sinai is a beautiful, natural, and historical place filled with fresh water springs and tall palm trees. Long ago, Moses and his people drank from these springs during their journey. Today, visitors enjoy the clean water, the quiet desert, and learning about its rich history and traditions.

Unit Tests

Unit (1)

Page 41

Adam visited a small village last Friday. He was excited. The weather was sunny. He walked beside the river and smelled the colorful flowers. He saw tall trees and many birds. He took photos of houses. In the afternoon, he went to the market and bought apples and oranges.

Unit (2)

Page 76

I'm Omar. I try to reduce pollution. I write on both sides of the paper and use a tote bag for shopping. I walk to school with my friends instead of using the car. I also remind my classmates to throw litter in the bin and keep our planet clean.

**Unit (3)**

Page III

Last Friday, Hana and her sister prepared for a picnic with their friends. They bought two cartons of milk. They also bought a bar of chocolate and a pack of biscuits for dessert. They took bottles of orange juice, slices of bread, a piece of cheese, and a kilo of apples for everyone.

Unit (4)

Page 155

Last Thursday, our school had a big end-of-year party. The playground was full of balloons and ribbons. There was a big cake on a table in the center of the playground. We danced, sang, and laughed with our teachers. Everyone took photos and shared food. It was a happy day we'll never forget.

Unit (5)

Page 189

My friends visited Port Said and Port Fouad last weekend. They walked along the Corniche, watched large ships moving through the canal, and took a short ferry ride to the other side. They enjoyed the beautiful sea view and the fresh, cool breeze. Before heading home, they happily ate delicious seafood.

Unit (6)

Page 210

Amir heard a little girl crying in the park. She was scared. Her dog got stuck in a hole. Amir looked for a long stick. He held it down for the dog to grab. Amir pulled the dog up safely. The dog licked Amir's hand. The girl thanked him happily.

Al-Azhar Tests**Unit (1)**

Page 44

Noha went on a trip with her grandfather to the Nile River. They woke up early and took a small boat. The water in the river was calm.

Unit (2)

Page 79

I'm Hala. I love nature. I water the plants and feed the animals. I think if we protect them, our planet will stay green and healthy for everyone.

Unit (3)

Page 114

Dalia likes to help others every day. She packs food and shares it with people in need. She helps her mother in the kitchen. She also helps her grandmother climb the steps.

Unit (4)

Page 158

Dina celebrated her birthday last night. Her parents decorated the house and made her a tasty cake. Some guests came, and they gave Dina unforgettable gifts.

Unit (5)

Page 192

Our cousins went to Port Said last week. They saw ships sailing in the Suez Canal. They enjoyed the quiet streets, the cool breeze, and the beautiful sea view.



Reviews (1&2)

Review (1) – Test (1) Page 119

Fatma lives in a small village. Her family farms, raises animals, and knows all their neighbors. When she visited the city, she saw tall buildings and many shops everywhere. She said it was exciting but noisy and busy. She realized that each place has advantages and challenges that its people adapt to.

Review (1) – Test (2) Page 122

Maya and her friends prepared for a picnic near the river. Maya packed bread, cheese, and some cookies. Her friends brought a basket of bananas and a kilo of apples. They also took a bottle of orange juice. They were laughing and singing while getting everything ready.

Review (2) – Test (1) Page 215

In Egypt, we celebrate Labor Day on May 1st. It is a special day to thank all workers. At Maria's school, students made posters showing different jobs. The teachers explained that all jobs are important in our everyday lives. All the students clapped for all the workers, showing appreciation for their efforts.

Review (2) – Test (2) Page 218

Noha spent her mid-year vacation in Dahab. She went scuba diving at the Blue Hole and saw amazing sea life. She also went hiking

in the mountains and enjoyed horseback riding along the beach. She thinks Dahab is peaceful and full of adventure! She will definitely visit it again.

Final Tests

Test (1) Page 222

Our Earth gives us water, electricity, and gas. We must use them carefully. Turn off the tap to save water. Switch off the lights when you leave the room. Gas helps us cook and stay warm, so we should never waste it. Small actions can help save these natural resources and stop them from running out.

Test (2) Page 225

Amr and Salma talked about the family's gathering. They played games and listened to music. Amr played chess with his uncle Kareem, but Kareem won. Salma played hide-and-seek with her cousin. The food was delicious, and everyone enjoyed the fruit salad and exchanged gifts happily. It was fun!

Test (3) Page 228

Reem helped her mother in the kitchen last week. She washed her hands carefully before starting. Then, she placed the bread, cheese, and vegetables on the counter. Her mother talked to her about cleanliness. Reem made delicious sandwiches and felt very happy and proud of her work.

**Test (4)****Page 231**

Sami and Omar spent the weekend in a small village. The weather was sunny. They walked beside the river, and noticed how clean and fresh the air was. They also took photos of trees and flowers. The sellers at the market were friendly. They enjoyed the fresh air and quiet life.

Test (5)**Page 234**

Omar lived in a quiet village near a wide river. One sunny day, he and Sami played with a red kite in the field. The kite flew high until it drifted away across the river. The boys decided to bring it back. Their neighbor was kind and helped them find it.

Test (6)**Page 237**

Oyoun Mousa, also called Moses Springs, is a wonderful place in South Sinai. It has fresh water springs and tall palm trees. Long ago, Moses and the people drank water from these springs during their journey. Visitors now enjoy the clean desert air, take photos, and learn about its special history.

Test (7)**Page 240**

Two weeks ago, Kareem and Fatma went to the market with their mother. They bought fruits, vegetables, and bread. Then, they packed the food in bags and gave it to poor families in their neighborhood. They talked to the people and felt proud to help. It was hard work, but Kareem and Fatma enjoyed it.

Test (8)**Page 243**

Last weekend, Talia went to the mountains with her family. The weather was cold, but the view was very nice. She saw tall green trees and a wide stream flowing between the rocks. Talia and her family were far from the city. They walked along small paths, took photos, and enjoyed the peaceful view at night.

Test (9)**Page 246**

On May 1st, my family and I celebrated Labor Day. It is a special day to honor workers and all the hard work they do. We joined an event in our neighborhood. Workers were thanked for their efforts. I made a card for my father. Everyone was happy and enjoyed the special celebration together.

Test (10)**Page 249**

Last weekend, Ahmed and Omar visited a village near the city. The weather was sunny, and they felt excited. They noticed how clean and fresh the air was. The life there was very different from the busy city.